

新概念英語 ②

New Concept English

课后练习

Lesson 1 A private conversation -----	7
Lesson 2 Breakfast or lunch? -----	10
Lesson 3 Please send me a card -----	13
Lesson 4 An exciting trip-----	16
Lesson 5 No wrong numbers-----	19
Lesson 6 Percy Buttons -----	22
Lesson 7 Too late -----	25
Lesson 8 The best and the worst-----	28
Lesson 9 A cold welcome -----	31
Lesson 10 Not for jazz -----	34
Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another-----	37
Lesson 12 Goodbye and good luck -----	40
Lesson 13 The Greenwood Boys-----	43
Lesson 14 Do you speak English? -----	46
Lesson 15 Good news -----	49
Lesson 16 A polite request-----	52
Lesson 17 Always young-----	55
Lesson 18 He often does this!-----	58
Lesson 19 Sold out -----	61
Lesson 20 One man in a boat-----	64
Lesson 21 Mad or not? -----	67
Lesson 22 A glass envelope -----	70
Lesson 23 A new house -----	73
Lesson 24 It could be worse-----	76
Lesson 25 Do the English speak English?-----	79
Lesson 26 The best art critics-----	82
Lesson 27 A wet night -----	85
Lesson 28 No parking -----	88
Lesson 29 Taxi -----	91

Lesson 30 Football or polo? -----	94
Lesson 31 Success story -----	97
Lesson 32 Shopping made easy -----	100
Lesson 33 Out of the darkness -----	103
Lesson 34 Quick work -----	106
Lesson 35 Stop thief -----	109
Lesson 36 Across the Channel -----	112
Lesson 37 The Olympic Games -----	115
Lesson 38 Everything except the weather -----	118
Lesson 39 Am I all right? -----	121
Lesson 40 Food and talk -----	124
Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat? -----	127
Lesson 42 Not very musical -----	130
Lesson 43 Over the South Pole -----	133
Lesson 44 Through the forest -----	136
Lesson 45 A clear conscience -----	139
Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable -----	142
Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost -----	145
Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something? -----	148
Lesson 49 The end of a dream -----	151
Lesson 50 Taken for a ride -----	154
Lesson 51 Reward for virtue -----	157
Lesson 52 A pretty carpet -----	160
Lesson 53 Hot snake -----	163
Lesson 54 Sticky fingers -----	166
Lesson 55 Not a gold mine -----	169
Lesson 56 Faster than sound! -----	172
Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam? -----	175
Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise? -----	178

Lesson 59 In or out? -----	181
Lesson 60 The future -----	184
Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble -----	187
Lesson 62 After the fire -----	190
Lesson 63 She was not amused -----	193
Lesson 64 The Channel Tunnel -----	196
Lesson 65 Jumbo versus the police -----	199
Lesson 66 Sweet as honey! -----	202
Lesson 67 Volcanoes -----	205
Lesson 68 Persistent -----	208
Lesson 69 But not murder! -----	211
Lesson 70 Red for danger -----	214
Lesson 71 A famous clock -----	217
Lesson 72 A car called Bluebird -----	220
Lesson 73 The record - holder -----	223
Lesson 74 Out of the limelight -----	226
Lesson 75 SoS -----	229
Lesson 76 April Fools' Day -----	232
Lesson 77 A successful operation -----	235
Lesson 78 The last one? -----	238
Lesson 79 By air -----	241
Lesson 80 The Crystal Palace -----	244
Lesson 81 Escape -----	247
Lesson 82 Monster or fish? -----	250
Lesson 83 After the elections -----	253
Lesson 84 On strike -----	256
Lesson 85 Never too old to learn -----	259
Lesson 86 Out of control -----	262
Lesson 87 A perfect alibi -----	265

Lesson 88 trapped in a mine -----	268
Lesson 89 A slip of the tongue-----	271
Lesson 90 What's for supper?-----	274
Lesson 91 Three men in a basket -----	277
Lesson 92 Asking for trouble -----	280
Lesson 93 A noble gift -----	283
Lesson 94 Future champions -----	287
Lesson 95 A fantasy-----	290
Lesson 96 The dead return -----	293

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

Lesson 1 A private conversation

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where did you go last week? (To the theatre.)
- 2 Did you have a good seat? (Yes, I did.)
- 3 Was it an interesting play? (Yes, it was.)
- 4 You enjoyed the play, didn't you? (No, I didn't.)
- 5 Who was sitting behind you? (A young man and a young woman.)
- 6 Could you hear what the actors were saying? (No, I couldn't.)
- 7 Why couldn't you hear? (They were talking loudly.)
- 8 What were they doing? (Talking loudly.)
- 9 Did you get angry with them or not? (Yes, I did.)
- 10 You turned round, didn't you? (Yes, I did.)
- 11 How did you look at them? (Angrily.)
- 12 They didn't pay any attention, did they? (No, they didn't.)
- 13 Could you bear it? (No, I couldn't.)
- 14 What did you do then? (I turned round again and said angrily, 'I can't hear a word!')
- 15 What did the young man say? ('It's none of your business. This is a private conversation!')

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if I went to the theatre last week.

S: Did you go to the theatre last week?

T: When ...?

S: When did you go to the theatre?

1 I went to the theatre last week. (When)

2 I had a good seat. (What kind)

3 I saw an interesting play. (What)

4 a young man and a young woman were sitting behind me.
(Who) (Where)

5 they were talking loudly. (How)

6 I couldn't hear the actors. (Who)

7 I turned round. (What ...do)

8 I looked at the man and the woman angrily. (How)

Pattern drill

1

T: walk across the stage -slow

S1: How did she walk across the stage?

S2: She walked very slowly across the stage.

behave at the theatre -rude/bad

drive through the park -quick/slow

sleep on the train -sound/quiet

listen to his story -patient/careful

2

T: hear the radio

S1: I can hear the radio now. Can you?

S2: Of course I can. I can hear it perfectly well.

hear the actors see those men

see the theatre see the policeman

see her house hear the rain hear

his voice hear some music

3

T: last night -a good talk on the radio (saw or heard)

S: I heard a good talk on the radio last night.

just now -a voice/knock at the door

last night -a cry/shout outside

at lunch -a fly/hair in my soup

last week -a camel/monkey at the zoo

4

T: see the race - large crowd

S1: Didn't you see the race?

S2: I couldn't. The crowd was too large.

read the letter -small/bad writing

see her face -poor/bad light

swim in the lake -could/deep water

finish your lunch -hot/salty food

Tell the story

- 1 Last week -went -theatre
- 2 didn't enjoy -play
- 3 young man -woman -behind me
- 4 talking loudly
- 5 could not -actors
- 6 I turned -and looked -angrily
- 7 didn't pay -attention
- 8 In the end -couldn't bear
- 9 'can't hear -word' -said
- 10 'none -business' -man -'private'

Topics for discussion

- 1 When did you last go to the theatre/cinema? Tell me about the play/film.
- 2 Do you get angry easily? What sort of thing makes you angry?
- 3 Would you like to be an actor? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer went to the theatre last week. He did not enjoy the play. A young man and a young woman were sitting behind him. They were talking loudly. The writer could not hear the actors. He turned round. 'I can't hear a word!' he said. 'This is a private conversation!' the young man said.

Lesson 2 Breakfast or lunch?

Comprehension questions

- 1 What day was it? (Sunday.)
- 2 Do you always get up late on Sundays? (Yes, I do.)
- 3 Do you ever get up before lunchtime ? (Yes, I do.)
- 4 When did you get up last Sunday? (Very late.)
- 5 What was it like outside? (Dark.)
- 6 Did you think it was a nice day? (No, I didn't.)
- 7 What happened just then? (The telephone rang.)
- 8 Who was on the phone? (My aunt Lucy.)
- 9 How had she arrived? (By train.)
- 10 What did she say? ('I'm coming to see you.')
- 11 What did you say? ('I'm still having breakfast.')
- 12 Was she surprised to hear this? (Yes, she was.)
- 13 Did you have to repeat yourself? (Yes, I did.)
- 14 What did she ask you? ('Do you always get up so late?')

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I get up late on Sundays.

S: Do you get up late an Sundays?

T: When ...?

S: When do you get up late?

1 I get up late on Sundays. (When)

2 I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime. (What ...do) (Where)

3 I got up very late last Sunday. (When)

4 I looked out of the window. (Where)

5 my Aunt Lucy telephoned just then. (Who)

6 she' d come by train. (How)

7 she was coming to see me. (Who) (When)

8 I said, 'I'm still having breakfast:' (What)

9 it was one o'clock. (What time)

Pattern drill

1

T: John's sleeping.

S1: Where's John? He's Late.

S2: I expect he's still sleeping.

Mr. Smith's teaching Jane's dressing

Mrs. Smith's cooking Tom's getting ready

Henry's working Lucy's telephoning

Mary's having lunch James is shaving

2

T: clean the car -Sunday

S1: Why are you cleaning the car now?

S2: Because it's Sunday. I always clean the car on Sunday.

ring your aunt/friend -Saturday

go to the library/bank -Friday

play football/tennis -Wednesday

write to John/Mary -Thursday

3

T: drive very fast

S1: He's driving very fast these days, I see.

S2: No, no, you're wrong. He doesn't usually drive very fast.

drink heavily cook well write carefully get up

early

walk slowly work hard sleep soundly stay in bed

late

4

T: rude people

S1: What rude people!

S2: Yes, they ARE rude, aren't they!

an ugly woman horrible dresses

a strange story a rude girl

wonderful actors a good party

an interesting play an amusing man

Tell the story

- 1 never -early -Sundays
- 2 Last Sunday -very late
- 3 looked -window
- 4 dark outside -raining
- 5 Just then -telephone -Aunt Lucy
- 6 'arrived -train' -said
- 7 'coming -see -you'
- 8 'But -still -breakfast'-said
- 9 very surprised
- 10 'Dear -'she said, '-one o' clock'

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you get up early or late? Do you find it easy/difficult to get up? Why?
- 2 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 3 When do people visit friends and relatives in your country?

Key to Summary writing

The writer always gets up late on Sundays. He got up late last Sunday. Then his aunt Lucy telephoned. She had arrived by train. She was coming to see him. 'I'm still having breakfast,' he said. His aunt was very surprised. It was one o'clock

Lesson 3 Please send me a card

Comprehension questions

- 1 What always spoils your holidays? (Postcards do.)
- 2 Where did you go last summer? (Italy.)
- 3 What did you visit? (Museums.)
- 4 Where did you sit? (In public gardens.)
- 5 Did you learn a little Italian? (Yes, I did.)
- 6 Who taught you? (A friendly waiter did.)
- 7 What did he lend you? (A book.)
- 8 Did you understand what you read? (No, I didn't.)
- 9 How often did you think about postcards? (Every day.)
- 10 Did your holidays pass quickly? (Yes, they did.)
- 11 Did your friends receive any cards from you? (No, they didn't.)
- 12 What did you do on the last day? (I made a big decision.)
- 13 When did you get up?(Early.)
- 14 How many cards did you buy? (Thirty-seven.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I went to Italy for my summer holidays.

S: Did you go to Italy for your summer holidays?

T: Where ...?

S: Where did you go for your summer holidays?

1 I went to Italy for my summer holidays. (Where) (Why) (When)

2 I visited museums. (What) (When)

3 I sat in public gardens. (Where)

4 I learnt a little Italian. (How much)

5 a friendly waiter taught me. (Who)

6 he lent me a book. (What) (Who)

7 I read a few lines. (How many)

8 I thought about postcards every day. (How often) (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: go abroad -in term-time

S1: Do you ever go abroad in term-time?

S2: Yes, I went abroad last term.

go out/play cards -during the week

catch flu/catch a cold -in the winter

work/stay in bed -at the weekend

stay up late/watch TV -at night

play tennis/play golf -in the summer

2

T: bought Tom a pen

Sl: What did you buy Tom yesterday?

S2: I bought him a pen.

gave John a book bought Jane a hat

brought Jean a rose offered Tim a bed

showed Tom the keys taught Lucy French

made Susan a cake paid James 5 pence

lent David a pencil sent Kate a letter

3

T: buy the pen for his sister

S1: Who did you buy the pen for? Tom or his sister?

S2: I bought it for HER, of course.

show/take the key to his mother

lend/give the money to his sister

make/buy the cake for his parents

send/post the card to his brothers

Tell the story

- 1 Postcards -spoil -holidays
- 2 summer -Italy
- 3 museums -sat -gardens
- 4 waiter -few -Italian
- 5 lent -book, but -understand
- 6 Every day -thought -postcards
- 7 holidays -quickly -not -cards -friends
- 8 last day -decision
- 9 early -thirty-seven cards
- 10 whole day -room -not -single card

Topics for discussion

- 1 How did you spend your holidays last year? Where did you go and what did you do?
- 2 Talk about some of the things that can spoil a holiday.
- 3 What is the best way to learn a foreign language?

Key to Summary writing

Postcards always spoil the writer's holidays. He spent his holidays in Italy last summer. He thought about postcards every day. He did not send any cards to his friends. He bought thirty-seven cards on the last day. He stayed in his room all day. He did not write any cards.

Lesson 4 An exciting trip

Comprehension questions

- 1 Have you just received a letter? (Yes, I have.)
- 2 Was it from your sister or your brother? (From my brother.)
- 3 Is he in Austria? (No, he isn't.)
- 4 Where is he? (Australia.)
- 5 How long has he been there? (For six months.)
- 6 What's his job? (He's an engineer.)
- 7 Isn't he a mechanic? (No, he isn't.)
- 8 Who is he working for? (A big firm.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I've just received a letter.

S: Have you just received a letter?

T: What ...?

S: What have you just received?

- 1 I've just received a letter. (What)
- 2 it was from my brother, Tim. (Who)
- 3 he's in Australia. (Where.) (Who)
- 4 he's been there for six months. (How long)
- 5 he's an engineer. (What)
- 6 he's working for a big firm (Who)
- 7 he's just bought an Australian car. (What)
- 8 he's just gone to Alice Springs.. (Where)
- 9 it's a small town. (How big)
- 10 he'll soon visit Darwin. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: received Tim's letter

S1: Have you received Tim's letter yet?

S2: Yes, I've just received it.

combed your hair washed the dishes

seen the new play made the cakes

swept the carpet written to John

tidied your desk heard from Roy

2

T: read that book

S1: Why don't you read that book?

S2: Because I've already read it.

see that film cut the grass

write your letter cook the dinner

visit that town have breakfast

open the window paint the door

3

T: Australia

S1: He's gone to Australia.

S2: He's never been there before, has he?

Austria Japan

Brazil the U. S. A.

France Africa

Germany South America

4

T: the train arrived

S1: Has the train arrived?

S2: No, it hasn't arrived yet.

mother written the bus left

Alice telephoned the bell rung

the boss come the sun set

Tim gone abroad he noticed

Tell the story

- 1 just -letter -brother -Tim
- 2 in Australia
- 3 there -six months
- 4 Tim -engineer
- 5 big firm -already -number -places
- 6 bought -Australian car -Alice Springs small town -centre
- 7 soon -Darwin
- 8 From there -fly -Perth
- 9 never before -trip -exciting

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you know anyone who lives or works abroad? Tell us about him/her.
- 2 Which country would you like to visit? Why?
- 3 Have you got a pen friend? Do you think pen friends are a good idea? Why?

Key to Summary writing

The writer. has just received a letter from his brother, Tim. Tim is an engineer. He has been in Australia for six months. He has already visited many places. Now he is in Alice Springs: Tim has never been abroad before. He is enjoying his trip very much.

Lesson 5 No wrong numbers

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who has a garage in Silbury? (Mr. James Scott has.)
- 2 Where has he just bought another? (In Pinhurst.)
- 3 How far is Pinhurst from Silbury? (5 miles:)
- 4 Can Mr. Scott get a telephone for his new garage? (No, he can't.)
- 5 Is that why he's just bought some pigeons? (Yes, it is.)
- 6 How many has he bought? (Twelve.)
- 7 What happened yesterday? (A pigeon carried the first message.)
- 8 Did the bird cover the distance in two hours or three minutes? (Three minutes.)
- 9 Has Mr. Scott sent many messages from one garage to the other? (Yes, he has.)
- 10 What has he sent requests for? (Spare parts.)
- 11 Do pigeons take all his messages now? (Yes, they do.)
- 12 What kinds of messages do they carry? (Requests for spare parts, etc.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if James Scott has a garage in Silbury.

S: Has James Scott a garage in Silbury? T: Who...?

S: Who has a garage in Silbury?

- 1 James Scott has a garage in Silbury. (Who)
- 2 he's just bought another garage. (What)
- 3 his new one is in Pinhurst. (Where)
- 4 Pinhurst is five miles from Silbury. (How far)
- 5 he's just bought twelve pigeons. (How many)
- 6 they carry messages. (What)
7. a pigeon carried the first message to Silbury yesterday. (When)(What)
- 8 it took three minutes. (How long)

Pattern drill

1

T: the train left

S1: Has the train left?

S2: Yes, it's just left. It left a minute ago.

John arrived Mary rung up

the ship sailed the taxi come

the play begun the noise stopped

the men returned the letters arrived

2

T: driven a Mercedes -last week

S1: Have you ever driven a Mercedes?

S2: Yes, I drove one last week.

ridden a camel/donkey-last summer

climbed a mountain/tall tree-last year

won a prize/race -at school a year ago

had an accident/exciting holiday -in 1996

read a Russian play/novel -two years ago

3

T: go abroad

S1: He's gone abroad.

S2: Really? He went abroad last year too, didn't he?

buy a new car take the maths exam

paint his house build a new garage

sell some pigeons start a new firm

write a book give her a necklace

4

T: you-six months

S1: How long have you been here?

S2: I've been here for six months.

she-a year this cheese-weeks

he-two weeks these oranges-days.

they-five months that horse-hours

John-ten minutes this money-two days

Alice-a long time those ruins-years

Tell the story

- 1 Mr. James Scott-garage-Silbury and now-just bought-Pinhurst
- 2 Pinhurst-five miles-Silbury-can't-telephone-garage-bought-pigeons
- 3 Yesterday-pigeon-message-Pinhurst
- 4 covered-distance -minutes
- 5 Up to now -sent -requests -spare parts -messages-garage -the other
- 6 this way -begun -private-service

Topics for discussion

- 1 What do you have to do to get a telephone in your country?
- 2 Have you had any wrong numbers on the phone lately? What else can go wrong when you use the phone?
- 3 What other ways of sending messages are there?

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Scott has opened his second garage in Pinhurst. His first garage is in Silbury. Silbury is five miles away. Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage. He has bought twelve pigeons. They carry messages from one garage to the other in three minutes.

Lesson 6 Percy Buttons

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where have you just moved to? (To a house in Bridge Street.)
- 2 Is yours the only house in the street? (No, it isn't.)
- 3 What happened yesterday? (A beggar knocked at my door.)
- 4 What did he ask you for? (A meal and a glass of beer.)
- 5 Did he pay you for the meal? (No, he didn't.)
- 6 He didn't pay you for the beer either, did he? (No, he didn't.)
- 7 What did he do in return for it? (He stood on his head and sang songs.)
- 8 He ate the food and drank the beer. What did he do then?
(Then he put a piece of cheese in his pocket.)
- 9 Who told you about him later? (A neighbour did.) .
- 10 Is he well-known in Bridge street? (Yes, he is.)
- 11 What's he called? (Percy Buttons.)
- 12 Has he called on you before? (No, he hasn't.)
- 13 How often does he call on the houses in Bridge Street? (Once a month.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I've just moved to a house in Bridge Street.

S: Have you just moved to a house in Bridge Street?

T: Where...to?

S: Where have you just moved to?

1 I've just moved to a house in Bridge Street. (Where...to) (Who)

2 a beggar knocked at my door yesterday. (Who) (When)

3 he wanted a meal and some beer. (What)

4 he stood on his head and sang songs. (What...do)

5 I gave him a meal. (What)

6 he put a piece of cheese in his pocket. (Where) (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: a bottle of ink-in the desk

S1: I need some ink.

S2: There's a bottle of ink in the desk.

a bottle of milk/beer-in the fridge

a pot of glue/paint-in the cupboard

a bag of sugar/flour-on the table

a can of petrol/oil-in the garage

2

T: tea

S1: You drink a lot of tea, I must say!

S2: I couldn't live without tea. It's my favourite drink.

milk, beer, whisky, water, coffee,

soda, mineral water, iced coffee,

orange juice, tomato juice, Coca-Cola.

3

T: car-nice radio

S1: I like that car. It has a nice radio.

S2: I like the radio, but not the car!

house-big garden village-old church

room-fine view hotel-good restaurant

flower-nice smell coat-wide collar

park-big lake man-friendly dog

4

T: a cup-over there

S1: Get me a cup, will you?

S2: The cup over there?

S1: It doesn't matter-just get me a cup!

a vase/a plate-near the window

a tin of meat/a box-on the shelf

a hat/an umbrella-in the bedroom

a comb/a glass-in the bathroom

Tell the story

- 1 just moved-Bridge Street
- 2 Yesterday-beggar knocked-door
- 3 asked-meal-beer
- 4 In return-stood-sang
- 5 ate food-drank-beer
- 6 Then-piece of cheese-pocket-away
- 7 Later-neighbour-about him
- 8 Everybody -him -name -Percy Buttons
- 9 calls -house -street once a -and -asks -meal -glass of beer

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you think this story is true? Why/Why not?
- 2 How did people pay for things long ago, before we had money?
- 3 Imagine you are very hungry, but have no money for a meal. What would you do?

Key to Summary writing

The writer has just moved to a house in Bridge Street. A beggar knocked at her door yesterday. He sang songs. The writer gave him a meal and a glass of beer in return for this. The beggar's name is Percy Buttons. He calls at every house in the street once a month.

Lesson 7 Too late

Comprehension questions

- 1 Was the plane early or late? (Late.)
- 2 Who was waiting at the airport? (Some detectives.)
- 3 How long were they there? (All morning.)
- 4 Were they expecting a parcel? (Yes, they were.)
- 5 Was the parcel full of money or diamonds? (Diamonds.)
- 6 Where was it from? (From South Africa.)
- 7 Did they think some thieves would try to steal the diamonds? (Yes, they did.)
- 8 Why did they think this? (Someone had told the police.)
- 9 Were some detectives waiting inside the main building? (Yes, they were.)
- 10 Where were other detectives waiting? (On the airfield.)
- 11 Who took the parcel off the plane? (Two men did.)
- 12 Where did they carry it? (Into the Customs House.)
- 13 Who was keeping guard at the door? (Two detectives were.)
- 14 Who opened the parcel? (Two other detectives did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the plane was late.

S: Was the plane late?

T: What ... ?

S: What was late?

1 the plane was late. (What)

2 detectives were waiting at the airport. (Where)

3 they were waiting all morning. (How long)

4 they were expecting a parcel. (What)

5 it was from South Africa. (Where ... from)

Pattern drill

1

T: break your leg -skiing

S1: How did you break your leg?

S2: I broke it while I was skiing.

burn your arm/hand -ironing

cut your finger/thumb-dress-making

hurt your foot/leg -climbing

find/your ring/pen-sweeping the floor

2

T: phone rang -getting into the bath

S1: Where were you when the phone rang?

S2: I was getting into the bath when it rang.

postman came -mowing/watering the lawn

plane arrived -waiting at the airport

lesson began -reading/writing an essay

lights went out -cooking/having dinner

3

T: all afternoon -shopping

S1: What were you doing all afternoon?

I couldn't find you anywhere.

S2: I was shopping.

all night -waiting for a train/plane

all evening -visiting John/watching TV

all morning -cleaning/tidying the garage

all day -babysitting/looking after Mary

4

T: knocked over the vase.

S1: Who knocked over the vase?

S2: I knocked it over. I hope you don't mind.

put out the fire woke up the children

let out the dogs took down the notice

tore up the letter turned off the stereo

turned on the TV threw away the paper

Tell the story

- 1 plane -late -detectives -waiting
- 2 expecting -parcel -South Africa
- 3 earlier -told -police -thieves t
- 4 When -arrived -some -main building -others -airfield
- 5 Two men-parcel -carried -Customs House
- 6 two -guard -door -others opened
- 7 surprise -parcel -stones -sand

Topics for discussion

- 1 Can you describe what happens when someone goes through Customs?
- 2 How can we keep our valuables safe from thieves?
- 3 There is a saying 'Diamonds are a girl's best friend.'What do you think it means?

Key to Summary writing

Detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. They were expecting a valuable parcel of diamonds from South Africa. Two men took the parcel into the Customs House after the arrival of the plane. Two detectives opened it. The parcel was full of stones and sand.

Lesson 8 The best and the worst

Comprehension questions

- 1 Does the writer live in the same town as Joe Sanders? (Yes, he does.)
- 2 Has Joe got a garden? (Yes, he has.)
- 3 Is his the most beautiful one in the town? (Yes, it is.)
- 4 What does nearly everyone enter for? ('The Nicest Garden Competition'.)
- 5 Who wins every time? (Joe Sanders does.)
- 6 How big is Bill Frith's garden? (Bigger than Joe's.)
- 7 Does Joe work harder than Bill? (No, he doesn't.)
- 8 Whose garden has more flowers and vegetables? (Bill Frith's has.)
- 9 Whose garden is more interesting? (Joe Sanders'.)
- 10 What has he made? (Neat paths.)
- 11 Is there a pool in the garden? (Yes, there is.)
- 12 What has he built over it? (A wooden bridge.)
- 13 Does the writer like gardens? (Yes, he does.)
- 14 What doesn't he like? (Hard work.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Joe Sanders has the most beautiful garden in the town.

S: Has Joe Sanders the most beautiful garden in the town?

T: Who ... ?

S: Who has the most beautiful garden in the town?

- 1 Joe Sanders has the most beautiful garden in the town. (Who)
- 2 there is a garden competition every year. (How often) (Where) (What kind)
- 3 Joe wins every time. (Who) (How often)
- 4 Bill Frith's garden is larger than Joe's. (Whose) (How big)
- 5 he works harder than Joe. (How hard)
- 6 Joe's garden is more interesting. (Whose)
- 7 he has made neat paths. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: Joe and Bill have large gardens.

S1: But Joe's garden is larger than Bill's.

S2: No, BILL's is larger than JOE's.

Joe and Bill have fast/powerful cars.

Jane and Mary have long/dark hair.

Tom and Jane have small/comfortable flats.

Joe and Bill good/expensive watches.

2

T: ripe orange

S1: Which orange do you prefer?

S2: I prefer the riper one.

small glass soft carpet

old house pale colour

thick coat wide bed

large garden hard mattress

3

T: interesting presents

S1: I've got more presents than you have.

S2: Well, mine are more interesting than yours.

long letters good-looking friends

pretty dresses rich relations

useful books valuable jewels

talented children ripe apples

4

T: a hard worker

S1: Mary's a very hard worker.

S2: Yes, she's the hardest worker I've ever met.

a quick writer an intelligent person

a careful driver a patient listener

a pretty girl an early riser

a fast reader a good cook

Tell the story

- 1 Joe Sanders-most beautiful-town
- 2 Nearly everyone-competition-each year-Joe-every time
- 3 Bill Frith's-larger-Joe's
- 4 Bill-harder-more-flowers-vegetables-Joe's-interesting
- 5 neat paths-wooden bridge-pool
- 6 I-gardens-but not-work
- 7 Every year-enter-competition too-always-prize-worst garden-town

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe the most beautiful garden or park you've seen, and say why you liked it.
- 2 Are there a lot of parks and gardens in the towns in your country? Why/Why not?
- 3 Do you think competitions are a good idea? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Joe Sanders has the best garden in town. He wins 'The Nicest Garden Competition' each year. Bill Frith also has a fine garden. Joe's is better. The writer's garden is terrible. He always wins a prize for the worst garden in the town.

Lesson 9 A cold welcome

Comprehension questions

- 1 When did you go to the Town Hall? (On Wednesday evening.)
- 2 What was special about Wednesday? (It was the last day of the year.)
- 3 Was there a large crowd? (Yes, there was.)
- 4 Where had everyone gathered? (Under the Town Hall clock.)
- 5 When would it strike twelve? (At midnight.)
- 6 At what time did you arrive? (11.40.)
- 7 When did the clock stop? (11.55.)
- 8 Which hand did not move? (The minute hand.)
- 9 Did you wait for something to happen? (Yes, we did.)
- 10 What did someone shout suddenly? ('It's two minutes past twelve! The clock has stopped!')
- 11 What did you do when you heard this? (I looked at my watch.)
- 12 What time did your watch say? (Two minutes past twelve.)
- 13 What time did the big clock say? (Five to twelve.)
- 14 It was already the New Year, wasn't it? (Yes, it was.)
- 15 What did the big clock refuse to do? (To welcome the New Year.)
- 16 Did everybody begin to laugh? (Yes, they did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if we went to the Town Hall on Wednesday evening.

S: Did you go to the Town Hall on Wednesday evening?

T: Where ...?

S: Where did you go on Wednesday evening?

1 we went to the Town Hall on Wednesday evening. (Where) (When) (Who)

2 it was the last day of the year. (Which)

3 a large crowd had gathered under the clock. (Where) (What) (Why)

4 the clock would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time. (When) (What) (Why)

5 it stopped at five to twelve. (When)

6 we waited for seven minutes. (How long)

7 someone suddenly shouted. (What ...do)

Pattern drill

1

T: grandmother -1934

S1: When was your grandmother born?

S2: She was born in 1934.

grandfather -1928 brother - 1967

mother -1953 aunt -1949

sister -1977 father -1950

uncle -1947 nephew -1982

2

T: grandmother -October 10th

S1: When's your grandmother's birthday?

S2: It's on October 10th.

grandfather/father -July 6th/June 8th

father/mother -January 27th/March 3rd

sister/brother -August 12th/April 15th

niece/nephew -December 23rd/May 22nd

3

T: at four o'clock -at teatime.

S1: John came to see me at four o'clock.

S2: But I thought you were never at home at teatime.

on Saturday/Sunday -at the .weekend

before lunch/at ten -in the morning

after dinner/supper -in the evening

at midday/one -at lunchtime

4

T: on Sunday afternoon -in the morning

S1: John's arriving on Sunday afternoon.

S2: Oh, I thought he was arriving in the morning.

early on Monday -at midday/in the evening

next summer -in the autumn/winter

during the week -at the weekend/on Sunday

on June 10th -in July/August

Tell the story

- 1 Wednesday -went -Town Hall
- 2 last day -year -crowd -people -gathered-clock
- 3 strike twelve -twenty minutes'
- 4 Fifteen minutes -five to -stopped
- 5 minute hand -move
- 6 waited -nothing
- 7 Suddenly -shouted 'two -twelve -clock-stopped'
- 8 looked -watch -true
- 9 big clock refused -Year
- 10 that moment -everyone -laugh -sing

Topics for discussion

- 1 What did you do to celebrate the last New Year?
- 2 What other important days are there in the year? How do you celebrate them?
- 3 Have you, or a friend, ever been late because your watch had stopped? Tell us about it.

Key to Summary writing

We went to the Town Hall on New Year's Eve. There were a lot of people there. The Town Hall clock would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time. It stopped at five to twelve. It refused to welcome the New Year. Then the crowd began to laugh and sing.

Lesson 10 Not for jazz

Comprehension questions

- 1 What kind of instrument do we have? (An old one.)
- 2 What's it called? (A clavichord.)
- 3 Where was it made? (In Germany.)
- 4 When was it made? (In 1681.)
- 5 Where is our clavichord kept? (In the living room.)
- 6 How long has it belonged to our family? (A long time.)
- 7 Who bought it? (My grandfather did.)
- 8 When was it bought?(Many years ago.)
- 9 Was it damaged recently? (Yes, it was.)
- 10 Who damaged it? (A visitor did.)
- 11 What did she try to do? (Play jazz on it.)
- 12 How did she strike the keys? (Very hard.)
- 13 How many strings were broken? (Two.)
- 14 Who was shocked? (My father was.)
- 15 What aren't we allowed to do now? (Touch it.)
- 16 Is it being repaired? (Yes, it is.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if we own an old musical instrument.

S: Do you own an old musical instrument?

T: What kind...?

S: What kind of instrument do you own?

1 we own an old musical instrument. (What kind)

2 it's called a clavichord. (What)

3 it's kept in the living room. (Where)

4 it was made in Germany. (Where) (What)

5 it was made in 1681. (When) (What)

6 it has belonged to us for a long time. (How long) (What) (Who...to)

7 it was bought by my grandfather. (Who)

8 it was damaged recently. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: the Hovercraft, invented -an Englishman

S1: Who was the Hovercraft invented by?

S2: I think it was invented by an Englishman.

this music/opera, composed-a German

that chair/table, made-my grandfather

this car/house, designed -an Italian

that competition/race, won-my friend

2

T: built this bridge -in 1937

S1: Who built this bridge?

S2: It was built in 1937 -that's all I know.

wrote this play -in 1861/in 1930

invented the telephone-in America/in 1876

made this piano -in Germany/in England

stole her diamonds-in the theatre/last night

discovered radium -in France/in 1898

3

T: the house, painted

S1: Has the house been painted yet?

S2: It's being painted now.

the car, serviced the TV, repaired

the stereo, mended the film, shown

the letters, sorted the dishes, washed up

the lunch, served the rubbish, collected

4

T: house, painted -two years ago

S1: When was the house last painted?

S2: It was painted two years ago.

car/stereo, repaired -last week

school/factory, inspected -in January

rent/electricity bill, paid -a month ago

carpet/floor, cleaned -on Saturday

Tell the story

- 1 We -instrument
- 2 called -clavichord
- 3 made -Germany -1681
- 4 Our -kept -room
- 5 belonged -family -time
- 6 bought -grandfather-years ago
- 7 Recently -damaged-visitor
- 8 tried -jazz -it
- 9 struck -keys -two strings -broken
- 10 father -shocked
- 11 Now -not allowed -touch
- 12 being repaired -friend -father's

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you got anything very old in your family? How long ago was it bought?
- 2 Have you ever damaged anything old? How was it repaired?
- 3 What kinds of things are easily broken?

Key to Summary writing

We own an old clavichord. It was made in 1681. My grandfather bought the instrument many years ago. A visitor damaged it recently. She tried to play jazz on it! She broke two of the strings. A friend of my father's is repairing it now.

Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where were you having dinner? (At a restaurant.)
- 2 Who came in? (Tony Steele.)
- 3 Did he once work in a lawyer's office? (Yes, he did.)
- 4 How long ago was that? (Years ago.)
- 5 Where is he working now? (At a bank.)
- 6 Is he paid a good salary? (Yes, he is.)
- 7 What does he always do? (Borrows money from his friends.)
- 8 Do you think he needs to borrow money? (No, I don't.)
- 9 Does he ever pay it back? (No, he doesn't.)
- 10 What did Tony do when he saw you? (He came and sat at the same table.)
- 11 Have you ever lent him any money? (No, I haven't.)
- 12 Did you have dinner together? (Yes, we did.)
- 13 What did you ask him during dinner? (To lend me twenty pounds.)
- 14 What did he give you immediately? (The money.)
- 15 Were you surprised? (Yes, I was.)
- 16 Did he pay for the dinner? (No, he didn't.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I was having dinner at a restaurant.

S: Were you having dinner at a restaurant?

T: Where...?

S: Where were you having dinner?

1 I was having dinner at a restaurant. (Where) (Who)

2 Tony Steele came in. (Who)

3 he worked in a lawyer's office years ago. (Where) (When)

4 he is working at a bank now. (Where)

5 he gets a good salary. (What kind)

6 he always borrows money from his friends. (Who ...from) (What)

7 Tony saw me. (Who) (When)

8 he sat at my table. (Where)

9 I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. (How much)

10 he gave me the money immediately. (When)

11 I must pay for his dinner. (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: wrote novels -educational books

S1: You once wrote novels, didn't you?

S2: Yes, but I'm writing educational books now.

taught/studied the piano -the violin

worked in a bank/factory -an office

did/painted portraits -landscapes

grew oats/tobacco-cotton

2

T: walks in the country -in the park

S1: Tony usually walks in the country

S2: Well, he's walking in the park today.

rests/sleeps upstairs -downstairs

studies with Mr. Bates -on his own

reads in the library -in the classroom

swims/fishes in the river -in the lake

3

T: John -reading in the library

S1: Have you seen John?

S2: He was reading in the library when I saw him last.

Mary -cooking lunch/having breakfast

Mr. Bates -tidying the classroom/teaching

the children -playing in the park/yard

Lucy -practising/playing the piano

4

T: They were ordered to fire by an officer.

S1: Who ordered them to fire?

S2: An officer did.

He was taught to read by his mother/father.

She was told to rest by the doctor/nurse.

I was asked to leave by a friend/servant.

He was advised to refuse by his wife/son.

Tell the story

- 1 dinner -restaurant -Tony Steele
- 2 worked -lawyer's office-now -bank
- 3 good salary -always borrows -his friends -never -back
- 4 saw me -came -sat -table
- 5 never borrowed -me
- 6 While -eating -asked -lend me twenty pounds
- 7 surprise -gave me -immediately
- 8 'I -never -money -you,' Tony -, 'so now -pay -dinner'

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you think it's a good idea to lend money to your friends? Why/Why not?
- 2 Would you lend money to a stranger? Why/Why not?
- 3 In what ways can we help other people?

Key to Summary writing

I was having dinner at a restaurant. I saw Tony Steele after a while. He always borrows money from his friends. Tony sat at my table. I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. He gave me the money at once. He wanted me to pay for his dinner.

Lesson 12 Goodbye and good luck

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who is your neighbour? (Captain Charles Alison.)
- 2 Where will he sail from tomorrow? (Portsmouth.)
- 3 Where will you meet him? (At the harbour.)
- 4 When will you meet him? (Early in the morning.)
- 5 Where will he be then? (In his small boat.)
- 6 Is it a large boat? (No, it isn't.)
- 7 It's a little one, isn't it? (Yes, it is.)
- 8 It's famous as well, isn't it? (Yes, it is.)
- 9 Why is it famous? (It has sailed across the Atlantic many times.)
- 10 At what time will Captain Alison set out? (At eight o'clock.)
- 11 Does that mean you'll have plenty of time? (Yes, it does.)
- 12 Will you see his boat? (Yes we shall/we will.)
- 13 What will you do then? (We'll say goodbye to him.)
- 14 How long will he be away? (For two months.)
- 15 You're very proud of him, aren't you? (Yes, we are.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if we're very proud of our neighbour.

S: Are you very proud of your neighbour?

T: Who...?

S: Who are you very proud of?

- 1 we're very proud of our neighbour. (Who)
- 2 he's called Captain Charles Alison. (What)
- 3 he will sail from Portsmouth tomorrow. (Where)
- 4 we shall meet him at the harbour. (Where)
- 5 we shall meet him early in the morning. (When)
- 6 the captain will be in his boat. (Where)
- 7 it's a small boat. (What kind of)
- 8 it's called Topsail. (What)
- 9 it has sailed across the Atlantic many times. (How many)
- 10 we shall see his boat. (What)
- 11 we'll say goodbye to him. (What...do)

Pattern drill

1

T: post the letters -at lunchtime

S1: When will you have time to post the letters?

S2: I'll post them at lunchtime.

wash/iron your clothes -after supper

do your homework/exercises -tonight

pack your luggage/cases -at bedtime

buy/get some stamps -before lunch

2

T: telephone the doctor -tomorrow

S1: Have you telephoned the doctor yet?

S2: No, I'll telephone him tomorrow.

see Mary/Tom -the day after tomorrow

decorate/sell your house -next week

feed the cat/dogs -this evening

pay/collect the rent -next month

3

T: you -eat too much

S1: You won't eat too much, will you?

S2: Don't worry! We shan't eat much.

she -spend too much

she -cook too much

he -drink too heavily

you -swim too far

they -stay up too late

he -behave too stupidly

he -be away too long

you -be back too late

4

T: John, back -at lunchtime

S1: I want to see John. When'll he be back?

S2: He'll be back at lunchtime. You can see him then.

Mary -in -this evening/after five

you -back at work -tomorrow/next week

your husband -at home -at six/tonight

that film -on -next Sunday/next month

Tell the story

- 1 neighbour -Alison -sail -tomorrow
- 2 meet him -harbour -morning
- 3 will be-boat, Topsail
- 4 famous -boat
- 5 sailed -Atlantic -times
- 6 Captain Alison -set out -o'clock so we -plenty of time
- 7 shall see -then -say goodbye
- 8 we -very proud
- 9 take part -important race -Atlantic

Topics for discussion

- 1 Can you name some famous sailors, and describe what they did?
- 2 What do you think is the best way to cross the Atlantic?
- 3 Why do you think people choose to cross the Atlantic single-handed (alone)?

Key to Summary writing

We shall meet our neighbour, Captain Charles Alison, at Portsmouth Harbour early tomorrow morning. He will be in his small boat, Topsail. He will leave at eight o'clock. We shall say goodbye to him. He will take part in an important race across the Atlantic.

Lesson 13 The Greenwood Boys

Comprehension questions

- 1 What are the Greenwood Boys? (A group of pop singers.)
- 2 What are they doing at present? (Visiting all parts of the country.)
- 3 Are they making a world tour? (No, they aren't.)
- 4 Where will they be arriving tomorrow? (Here.)
- 5 How will they be coming? (By train.)
- 6 Who'll be meeting them at the station? (Most of the young people in the town.)
- 7 Do you think there'll be many old people in the crowd? (No, I don't.)
- 8 Where will they be singing tomorrow? (At the Workers' Club.)
- 9 Will the Greenwood Boys be staying the whole week? (No, they won't.)
- 10 How long will they be staying then? (For five days.)
- 11 Will they be giving a performance on every night of their stay? (Yes, they will.)
- 12 How many performances will they give? (Five.)
- 13 Who'll have a difficult time? (The police will.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if The Greenwood Boys are a group of pop singers.

S: Are The Greenwood Boys a group of pop singers?

T: Who...?

S: Who are the Greenwood Boys?

- 1 the Greenwood Boys are a group of pop singers. (Who)
- 2 they're visiting all parts of the country at p resent. (Which parts)(When)
- 3 they'll be arriving here tomorrow. (When)
- 4 they'll be coming by train. (How)
- 5 most of the young people in the town will be meeting them. (Who)
(How many)
- 6 they'll be waiting at the station. (Where)
- 7 the Greenwood Boys will be staying for five days. (How long) (Where)
- 8 they will give five performances. (How many) (Where) (Who)
- 9 they'll be singing at the Workers' Club tomorrow. (Where) (When)
- 10 that'll be in the evening. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: next year -taking my final exams

S1: What will you be doing this time next year?

S2: I'll be taking my final exams.

tomorrow -playing/watching tennis

next month-studying/working for my exams

next week -lying on the sand/beach

next year-starting a job/at the university

2

T: it's raining

S1: It's raining again.

S2: I hope it won't still be raining tomorrow.

she's crying

they're drilling the road

it's snowing

he's feeling ill

3

T: go to the station

S1: I shall go to the station tomorrow.

S2: I'll be seeing you then. I'll be going there too.

go to the bank

ride in the park

read in the library

shop at Smith's

4

T: invitations to write

S1: What a lot of invitations to write!

S2: I'm afraid so. We'll probably be writing them all day.

food to cook

work to do

papers to read

clothes to wash

Tell the story

- 1 Greenwood Boys -group -pop
- 2 At present -visiting -country
- 3 arriving -tomorrow
- 4 by train -young people -station
- 5 Tomorrow -singing -Workers' Club
- 6 Greenwood Boys -staying -five days
- 7 During -time -five performances
- 8 As usual -police -difficult
- 9 trying -keep order
- 10 always the same -occasions

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe a concert you have been to, or heard about.
- 2 What do you think you'll be doing this time next year?
- 3 Do you prefer pop or classical songs/singers? Why?

Key to Summary writing

The Greenwood Boys are pop singers. They will be coming here tomorrow. Most of the young people in the town will be meeting them at the station. They will give five performances. The police will be trying to keep order as usual.

Lesson 14 Do you speak English?

Comprehension questions

- 1 What did you have last year? (An amusing experience.)
- 2 What part of France were you in? (The south of France.)
- 3 Had you been in a small village? (Yes, I had.)
- 4 Where did you drive on to? (The next town.)
- 5 Who waved to you on the way? (A young man did.)
- 6 What did he ask you for? (For a lift.)
- 7 When did you say good morning to him? (As soon as he had got into the car.)
- 8 What language did you speak? (French.)
- 9 Did your passenger reply in French? (Yes, he did.)
- 10 How many words of French do you know? (A few words.)
- 11 Did you speak to him during the journey? (No, I didn't.)
- 12 When did he suddenly say something? (When I had nearly reached the town.)
- 13 What did he ask you? (He asked me if I spoke English.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if I had an amusing experience last year.

S: Did you have an amusing experience last year? T: When...?

S: When did you have an amusing experience?

1 I had an amusing experience last year. (When) (Who)

2 I was in the south of France. (Where)

3 I had left a small village. (What kind of)

4 a young man waved to me. (Who) (Why)

5 he asked me for a lift. (What)

6 I said good morning to him. (What)

7 I spoke in French. (What language)

8 I know a few words of French. (How much)

9 he replied in French. (What language)

10 the young man spoke at the end of the journey. (When) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: angry -prepare lunch for him

S1: Why was he so angry?

S2: I hadn't prepared lunch for him.

upset -give Mary his letter/message

annoyed -post his letters/the parcel

pleased -report him to the headmaster

surprised -repair his bicycle/radio

2

T: see the film properly -my glasses

S1: Why couldn't you see the film properly?

S2: I hadn't taken my glasses with me.

find his house/the church -a map

see the show/exhibition -any money

open the door/garage -a key

sign the letter/card -a pen

3

T: tidy the garage -done

S1: Why didn't John tidy the garage yesterday?

S2: Because he'd already done it.

listen to the play/opera -heard

try the new restaurant/hotel -tried

go to the film/exhibition -seen

look at these pictures/photos -seen

4

T: burn the letter

S1: Did you really burn the letter?

S2: It was a mistake. I realized it as soon as I'd burnt it.

ring the police

let out the dogs

tear up the notice

spend all your money

Tell the story

- 1 amusing experience -year
- 2 left -small village -south of France -drove
- 3 On the way -man waved -me
- 4 stopped -asked -lift
- 5 into -car -good morning -French
- 6 He -same language
- 7 few words -not -any French-next town
- 8 Neither -spoke -journey
- 9 nearly -town -suddenly'-speak English?'
- 10 learnt -English himself

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever asked for a lift, or given one? If so, describe the person you met.
- 2 Describe the various ways you are able to recognize a foreigner in your country.
- 3 Have you ever tried to talk to someone who didn't know your language? What happened?

Key to Summary writing

The writer gave a lift to a young man in the south of France last year. They greeted each other in French. Apart from a few words, the writer doesn't speak any French. They sat in silence. At the end of the journey the young man asked, 'Do you speak English?' He was English himself.

Lesson 15 Good news

Comprehension questions

- 1 What did the secretary tell you? (That Mr. Harmsworth would see me.)
- 2 Where did you go? (To his office.)
- 3 How did you feel when you went in? (Very nervous.)
- 4 Where was Mr. Harmsworth sitting? (At his desk.)
- 5 What did he say about business? (That it was very bad.)
- 6 When did he tell you this? (After I had sat down.)
- 7 What did he tell you about the firm and salaries? (Business was bad, so the firm could not afford to pay large salaries.)
- 8 How many people had already left? (Twenty.)
- 9 Did you think it was your turn to lose your job? (Yes, I did.)
- 10 How did you speak to him? (In a weak voice.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Mr. Harmsworth is my employer.

S: Is Mr. Harmsworth your employer?

T: Who...?

S: Who is your employer?

- 1 Mr. Harmsworth is my employer. (Who)
- 2 his secretary told me that he would see me. (What) (Who)
- 3 I went into his office. (Where)
- 4 I felt very nervous. (How) (Why)
- 5 the firm couldn't afford to pay such large salaries. (What) (Why)
- 6 twenty people had left. (How many)
- 7 I thought he would tell me to leave too. (What)
- 8 he told me not to interrupt. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: The doctor's busy.

S1: Why can't you see the doctor now?

S2: His secretary says he's busy.

The boss is away/at lunch.

The manager's on holiday/isn't in.

The headmaster's ill/isn't free.

The dentist can't/ won't see anyone.

2

T: The doctor's busy.

S1: Didn't the doctor see you?

S2: No, his secretary said he was busy.

The bank manager's away/at a meeting.

Mr. Smith has gone home/on holiday.

Mr. Jones will see/call me later.

The minister can't/ won't see anyone.

3

T: Who broke that plate?

S1: Mary says John broke it.

S2: But I think MARY broke it.

paid the bill

washed the car

burnt the shirt

stained the carpet

4

T: There's been an accident.

S1: What did he say? I didn't hear.

S2: He said there'd been an accident.

a sale of old books

a fall in sales

a discussion on TV

a rise in wages

Tell the story

- 1 secretary-Mr. Harmsworth-see me
- 2 very nervous-went-office
- 3 didn't look-desk-I entered
- 4 sat down-said-business-bad
- 5 told-couldn't afford-salaries
- 6 Twenty-already left
- 7 knew-turn-come
- 8 'Mr. Harmsworth'-said-weak
- 9 '-interrupt'-said
- 10 smiled-told me- £ 1,000

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe an interview you have had.
- 2 Have you ever felt nervous? What makes you nervous?
- 3 What would you do with an extra £ 1,000 a year?

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Harmsworth wanted to see me. I felt very nervous about this. I went into his office. He said that business was bad. The firm could not pay such large salaries. Twenty people had left already. He did not ask me to leave as well. He offered me an extra £ 1,000 a year.

Lesson 16 A polite request

Comprehension questions

- 1 What happens if you park your car in the wrong place? (A traffic policeman will soon find it.)
- 2 He usually gives you a parking ticket, doesn't he? (Yes, he does.)
- 3 Are you lucky if he lets you go without one? (Yes, you are.)
- 4 Do the traffic police always give parking tickets?(No, they don't.)
- 5 Traffic police are sometimes very polite, aren't they? (Yes, they are.)
- 6 Where were you spending a holiday? (In Sweden.)
- 7 What did you find on your car? (A note.)
- 8 Did it welcome you to the city? (Yes, it did.)
- 9 Were you in a 'No Parking' area? (Yes, I was.)
- 10 What did the note ask you to pay attention to? (To the street signs.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if traffic police give parking tickets.

S: Do traffic police give parking tickets?

T: What ...do?

S: What do traffic police do?

1 traffic police give parking tickets. (What...do) (Who)

2 they will soon find your car, if you park in the wrong place. (How quickly)

3 traffic police are sometimes very polite. (Who)

4 I went to Sweden for a holiday. (Where)

5 I found a note on my car. (What) (Where)

6 it said, 'Welcome to our city.'(What)

7 my car was in a 'No Parking' area. (Where) (What) (Whose)

8 you will enjoy your stay here. (What)

9 the note was only a reminder. (What)

10 I obeyed the request. (What ...do)

Pattern drill

1

T: miss the train-go by taxi

S1: You'll miss the train if you're not careful.

S2: If I do, I'll go by taxi.

break that vase/ mirror-buy a new one

catch a cold/ flu-stay in bed

fail your test/ exam--try again

lose your job/ position-find another

2

T: clean the car

S1: Shall I clean the car for you?

S2: You can clean it if you want to.

post these letters/parcels

pay the bill/rent

order the books/records

take you to the theatre/ cinema

3

T: sell it

S1: What'll you do if he doesn't sell it?

S2: I'm sure he WILL sell it, but if he doesn't, I'll sell it.
myself!

write the letter

buy those pictures

return the books

send the fax

repair the gate

help that woman

ring the police

paint the garage

4

T: speak to him-nervous

S1: Don't speak to him if he's nervous.

S2: Of course I shan't speak to him if he's nervous!

disturb him-working/ busy/ occupied

force him to come-unwell/ feeling ill

wake her up-sleeping/ resting/ asleep

delay them-preparing to leave/ packing

Tel I the story

1 park-wrong place-policeman-find

2 lucky-lets you go-ticket

3 However-doesn't always

4 holiday-Sweden-note-my car

5 'Sir-welcome-city'

6 'No Parking'area

7 enjoy-pay attention-signs

8 note-a reminder

9 a request like this-cannot fail-obey it

Topics for discussion

1 What will happen if you park a car in the wrong place in your city?

2 Is it useful to have a car in a city? Why/ Why not?

3 Do you think the Swedish traffic police are always so polite?

Why/ Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Traffic police usually give you a ticket if you park your car in the wrong place. The writer found a polite note on his car during a holiday in Sweden. The traffic police wanted him to pay attention to their street signs. No one can fail to obey a polite request.

Lesson 17 Always young

Comprehension questions

- 1 What's your aunt called? (Jennifer.)
- 2 What is she? (An actress.)
- 3 How old is she? (At least thirty-five.)
- 4 Does she often appear on the stage as a young girl? (Yes, she does.)
- 5 What will she have to do soon? (Take part in a new play.)
- 6 How old will she pretend to be? (Seventeen.)
- 7 What colour dress must she wear? (Bright red.)
- 8 What kind of stockings must she wear? (Long blackstockings.)
- 9 Did she appear in a play last year? (Yes, she did.)
- 10 She had to wear short socks, didn't she? (Yes, she did.)
- 11 Do most women of thirty-five wear clothes like that? (No, they don't.)
- 12 Do people ever ask how old she is? (Yes, they do.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if my aunt Jennifer is an actress.

S: Is your aunt Jennifer an actress?

T: What ...?

S: What is your aunt Jennifer?

- 1 my aunt Jennifer is an actress. (What)
- 2 she's over thirty years old. (How old)
- 3 she often appears on the stage as a young girl. (What ...as) (Who)
- 4 she will have to take part in a new play soon. (When) (What)
- 5 she will be a girl of seventeen. (Who)
- 6 she'll wear a bright red dress. (What)
- 7 she'll appear in long black stockings. (What kind of) (What colour)
- 8 she was in another play last year. (When)
- 9 she had to wear short socks. (What)
- 10 she had to wear a bright dress. (What else)
- 11 it was orange. (What colour)

Pattern drill

1

T: go-meet my husband

S1: Have you really got to go now?

S2: I'm afraid I've got to. I have to meet my husband.

work-finish my essay/ study for an exam

go to bed-get up/ leave early tomorrow

leave-learn my part/ rehearse the play

practise-sing in/ give a concert next week

2

T: go-meet my husband

S1: Must you go now?

S2: I'm afraid so. I have to meet my husband.

work-finish my essay/ study for an exam

go to bed-get up/ leave early tomorrow

leave-learn my part/ rehearse the play

practise-sing in/ give a concert next week

3

T: town

S1: I've got to go to town today.

Do you think Mary will come with me?

S2: I doubt it. She had to go to town yesterday.

the bank hospital

the market the office

the town hall London

the library the country

the doctor's

4

T: fly-pick up a sick sailor

S1: He must be mad to fly anywhere today!

S2: He had no choice. He had to pick up a sick sailor.

climb-search for/ rescue a mountaineer

drive-meet his wife at the airport go-attend/ speak at a meeting

walk-get some medicine/ post the letters

Tell the story

- 1 My aunt-actress
- 2 must-thirty-five-old
- 3 In spite of-appears-stage-girl
- 4 Jennifer-take part-new play soon
- 5 This time-girl-seventeen
- 6 In the play-appear-dress-stockings
- 7 Last year-play-short socks-coloured dress
- 8 If-how old-always answers 'Darling-terrible-grown up!'

Topics for discussion

- 1 Who is your favourite actor/ actress? Why do you think he/ she is good?
- 2 Is it true that most women tell lies about their age? Why do they? What about men?
- 3 Do you think it's terrible to be grown up? Why/ Why not?

Key to Summary writing

My aunt Jennifer is an actress. She is over thirty years old. She often appears on the stage as a young girl. Jennifer will act the part of a girl of seventeen in a new play soon. She never tells anyone how old she really is.

Lesson 18 He often does this!

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where had you had lunch? (At a village pub.)
- 2 What did you do afterwards? (I looked for my bag.)
- 3 Had you left it on a chair or on the table? (On a chair.)
- 4 Was it still there? (No, it wasn't.)
- 5 Who came in as you were looking for it? (The landlord did.)
- 6 What did he ask you? ('Did you have a good meal?')
- 7 What did you reply? ('Yes, thank you.')
- 8 Did you say you couldn't pay the bill? (Yes, I did.)
- 9 Why couldn't you? (I hadn't got my bag.)
- 10 The landlord smiled, didn't he? (Yes, he did.)
- 11 What did he do then? (He went out.)
- 12 How soon did he return? (In a few minutes.)
- 13 What did he give back to you? (My bag.)
- 14 Who had taken your bag? (His dog had.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I had had lunch at a village pub.

S: Had you had lunch at a village pub?

T: Where ...?

S: Where had you had lunch?

- 1 I'd had lunch at a village pub. (Where)
- 2 I looked for my bag afterwards. (What)
- 3 I'd left it on a chair. (Where) (What)
- 4 the chair was beside the door. (Where)
- 5 the bag had gone. (What) (Where)
- 6 the landlord came in as I was looking for it. (Who)
- 7 I'd had a good meal. (What kind of)
- 8 I couldn't pay the bill. (What)
- 9 I'd lost my bag. (What) (Where)
- 10 the landlord smiled. (What ...do)
- 11 he went out immediately. (What) (Who)
- 12 he was away for a few minutes. (How long)
- 13 he returned with my bag. (What) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: this shell

S1: Oh, I like this shell!

S2: You can have it if you want it. I've got lots more of them.

this spoon this tie

these flowers this card

this ashtray these apples

these pencils this photograph

2

T: the tickets

S1: Have you got the tickets?

S2: Good heavens, where are they? I had them a minute ago!

your handbag the stamps

your biscuits the letter

the bill the matches

your pencil the map

3

T: five cars-rich

S1: That's Mr. Jones. He's the man who has five cars.

S2: He must be very rich to have five cars.

twelve cats/ six dogs-fond of animals

two degrees/ four diplomas-clever

two houses/ a villa in France-wealthy

a big car/ a large house-important

4

T: a card from John

S1: Have you had a card from John yet?

S2: Yes, I had a card from him yesterday.

a meal with Jean a lecture on Picasso

a lesson on Plato the bill for the gas

letter from Tom a message from Jane

a cable from Lucy a present from Harry

Tell the story

- 1 lunch-village pub-looked-bag
- 2 left it-chair-door-not there
- 3 looking for-landlord came
- 4 'Did you-good meal?'-
- 5 'Yes', -I answered, 'but-can't pay'
- 6 'I haven't-bag'
- 7 smiled-immediately went -
- 8 few minutes-with my bag-gave it -
- 9 'Sorry-'he said. 'My dog-garden'
- 10 often does

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever lost any money? If so, tell us what happened.
- 2 Describe the best meal you've ever had.
- 3 'The dog is a man's best friend.' Do you agree with this saying?
Why/ Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer had lunch at a village pub. She could not find her bag after her meal. She could not pay the bill. The landlord soon found it for her. His dog had taken it into the garden.

Lesson 19 Sold out

Comprehension questions

- 1 Were you at a theatre or a cinema? (At a theatre.)
- 2 Did you think the play was soon going to begin? (Yes, I did.)
- 3 Who was with you? (Susan was.)
- 4 She thought the play might have begun already, didn't she? (Yes, she did.)
- 5 What did you do? (I hurried to the ticket office.)
- 6 How many tickets did you ask for? (Two.)
- 7 Did the girl at the ticket office have any left? (No, she didn't.)
- 8 What did she say? ('We've sold out.')
- 9 Was Susan disappointed? (Yes, she was.)
- 10 Who hurried to the ticket office just then? (A man did.)
- 11 What did he want to return? (Two tickets.)
- 12 Did the girl accept them? (Yes, she did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Susan and I were at the theatre.

S: Were Susan and you at the theatre?

T: Where ...?

S: Where were you and Susan?

- 1 Susan and I were at the theatre. (Where)
- 2 we wanted to see a play. (What)
- 3 the play was going to begin at any moment. (When) (What)
- 4 I hurried to the ticket office. (Where)
- 5 I asked for two tickets. (How many)
- 6 the girl said she was sorry. (What)
- 7 Susan was disappointed. (Who) (Why)
- 8 a man hurried to the ticket office just then. (Who) (When)
- 9 he returned two tickets. (How many)
- 10 I went back to the ticket office. (Where)
- 11 I asked for those two tickets. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: use your telephone

S1: May I use your telephone please?

S2: Of course you can.

borrow this book

boil some water

read your letter

take this newspaper

have some bread

look at your photos

close the windows

pick some flowers

2

T: use your telephone

S1: I don't want to disturb you but might I use your telephone for a moment?

S2: Of course you may use it.

listen to your stereo/ new CD

use your typewriter/ sewing machine

borrow your pen/ ashtray/ matches

play your CD-player/ piano

3

T: he telephoned

S1: Has he telephoned yet?

S2: He may have telephoned. Why don't you ask John? He's been in all day.

she left a message

they mended the TV

she fed the dogs

the Smiths called

the doctor been

the laundry come

the post arrived

they read the meter

4

T: the police found my car

S1: I've been away. Can you tell me if the police found my car last week?

S2: They might have found it, but they haven't mentioned it.

John took/ failed/ passed his exam

the boss saw/ read/ liked my report

my wife spoke to/ rang/ met my secretary

Tell the story

1 'play-begin-any moment' -said

2 'may have begun' -Susan

3 hurried-ticket office-'tickets?'

4 'sorry-sold out,' -girl

5 Just then-hurried-ticket office

6 'return-tickets' -asked. 'Certainly'

7 back-at once. 'Could-those two?'

8 'Certainly' - 'next Wednesday's-want them?'

9 'might as well' -sadly

Topics for discussion

1 Is it always easy to get seats for the theatre in your country? For what kind of performances is it safer to book your tickets in advance?

2 How do you like to spend your evenings?

3 If you're going on holiday, what do you have to book in advance?

Key to Summary writing

The play was going to begin at any moment. I asked for two tickets. There were none left. Susan and I were disappointed. Just then, a man hurried to the ticket office. He returned two tickets. They were for next Wednesday's performance. I bought them.

Lesson 20 One man in a boat

Comprehension questions

- 1 What's your favourite sport? (Fishing.)
- 2 Does it worry you if you don't catch anything? (No, it doesn't.)
- 3 Do you often fish without catching anything? (Yes, I do.)
- 4 Are all fishermen unlucky? (No, they aren't.)
- 5 But some are, aren't they? (Yes, they are.)
- 6 What do they catch instead of fish? (Old boots and rubbish.)
- 7 Why do you think you are even less lucky than these fishermen?
(I never catch anything.)
- 8 Where have you spent whole mornings? (On the river.)
- 9 What do you always go home with? (With an empty bag.)
- 10 What do your friends say you must do? (Give up fishing.)
- 11 What do they say about fishing? (It's a waste of time.)
- 12 What don't they realize? (One important thing.)
- 13 What are you really interested in? (Sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if fishing is my favourite sport.

S: Is fishing your favourite sport?

T: What ...?

S: What is your favourite sport?

- 1 fishing is my favourite sport. (What)
- 2 I fish for hours without catching anything. (How long)
- 3 some fishermen are unlucky. (Who) (Why)
- 4 they catch old boots. (What)
- 5 they catch rubbish too. (What else)
- 6 I am even less lucky. (Why)
- 7 I never catch anything. (What)
- 8 I spend whole mornings on the river. (How long) (Where) (Who)
- 9 you must give up fishing. (What) (Why)
- 10 they don't realize one important thing. (What) (Who)
- 11 fishing is a waste of time. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: keen on -walking

S1: John's keen on walking.

S2: Really? I'm keen on walking, too.

interested in -reading/acting/cooking

keen on -fishing/swimming/sailing

capable of -doing the job/working hard

tired of -staying here/doing nothing

2

T: smoke

S1: Why don't you give up smoking?

S2: Because smoking is fun.

read in bed sleep on the floor

eat sweets collect birds' eggs

watch TV walk to school

learn English write poetry

3

T: listen to him -get bored

S1: Why don't you listen to him?

S2: Because I can't listen to him without getting bored.

ride a bike -get tired/fall off

watch TV -get a headache/fall asleep

go by plane -feel sick/feel afraid

speak to him -be rude/get angry

4

T: got a job

S1: Congratulate me! I've just got a job!

S2: Congratulations on getting a job!

won the match got into university

sold a picture created a new record

passed my exams written a book

won first prize got a rise in salary

Tell the story

- 1 Fishing -favourite sport
- 2 often -hours -anything
- 3 some -unlucky
- 4 Instead -fish -boots -rubbish
- 5 I -less 11 only -sitting -nothing
- 6 never -even -boots
- 7 whole mornings -river -home -empty
- 8 'give up' -friends - 'waste '
- 9 don't realize -important thing
- 10 not -interested -fishing

Topics for discussion

- 1 What is your favourite pastime?
- 2 Do you think the writer is wasting his time? Why/Why not?
- 3 Do you think the writer would like to work as: a fisherman?
Would you? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Fishing is the writer's favourite sport. Some unlucky fishermen catch old boots and rubbish. The writer is not so lucky. He never catches anything. He is not really interested in fishing. Sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all is the only thing that interests him.

Lesson 21 Mad or not?

Comprehension questions

- 1 What are aeroplanes doing to you? (Slowly driving me mad.)
- 2 Where do you live? (Near an airport.)
- 3 What can be heard night and day? (Passing planes.)
- 4 When was the airport built? (Years ago.)
- 5 Do you know why it wasn't used then? (No, I don't.)
- 6 When did it come into use? (Last year.)
- 7 How many people must have been driven away by the noise?
(Over a hundred.)
- 8 Are you the only person left? (No, I am not.)
- 9 You're one of the few left, aren't you? (Yes, I am.)
- 10 What do you sometimes think? (This house will be knocked down by
a passing plane.)
- 11 Why have you been offered a large sum of money? (To go away.)
- 12 Will you accept it? (No, I won't.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad.

S: Are aeroplanes slowly driving you mad?

T: What ...?

S: What is slowly driving you mad?

1 aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad. (What) (Why)

2 I live near an airport. (Where)

3 passing planes can be heard night and day. (What) (When)

4 the airport was built years ago. (When) (What)

5 it came into use last year. (When)

6 over a hundred people must have been driven away from their homes.
(How many)

7 they've been driven away by the noise. (Why) (Who) (What)

8 there are only a few people left. (How many) (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: paint the gate

S1: When will the gate be painted?

S2: I was told it would be painted tomorrow morning.

close the shops issue the stamps

mend the lock deliver the post

collect the books pay the workers

service the car inform the pupils

2

T: man -drive

S1: Can't that man drive?

S2: No, but he can be taught to drive.

boy -swim/play tennis/light a fire

girl -spell correctly/cook/dance

dog -open the door/catch a ball

your son -play the piano/fly a plane

3

T: settle -the strike soon

S1: The strike must be settled soon or there'll be trouble.

S2: Don't worry! It'll be settled soon.

correct -the fault/mistake immediately

take -my orders/instructions seriously

type -the letters/notice accurately

clean -the rooms/house thoroughly

4

T: picked -the apples

S1: Has anyone picked the apples yet?

S2: No, they still have to be picked.

typed/checked/signed -those letters

prepared/cooked/ordered -the meal

corrected/marked -these exercise books

washed/mended/ironed -his shirts

Tell the story

- 1 Aeroplanes -slowly -mad
- 2 live -airport -passing planes -heard -and day
- 3 airport -built -years ago -not used
- 4 Last year -came -use
- 5 hundred -driven away -homes -noise
- 6 I -one -few -left
- 7 think -house -knocked down -plane
- 8 offered -sum -go -determined -here
- 9 Everybody -mad -probably right

Topics for discussion

- 1 What kind of noises do you hear where you live?
- 2 Compare the noises heard in the country and in towns.
- 3 What problems do people face when they live near airports?

Key to Summary writing

The writer is slowly going mad. He lives near an airport. Passing planes can be heard night and day. Most of his neighbours have left their homes. He has been offered money to leave. He is determined to stay. Everyone says he must be mad. They are probably right.

Lesson 22 A glass envelope

Comprehension questions

- 1 What's your daughter called? (Jane.)
- 2 Does Jane live in Holland? (No, she doesn't.)
- 3 She lives in England, doesn't she? (Yes, she does.)
- 4 When were you travelling across the Channel? (Last year.)
- 5 Jane put a piece of paper into a bottle, didn't she? (Yes, she did.)
- 6 What had she written on it? (Her name and address.)
- 7 What did she do with it? (She threw it into the sea.)
- 8 When did she receive a letter from Holland? (Ten months later.)
- 9 Was it from a girl or a boy? (A girl.)
- 10 How old was she? (She was the same age as Jane.)
- 11 What do both girls do now? (They write to each other regularly.)
- 12 How do they send their letters? (By post.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if my daughter is called Jane.

S: Is your daughter called Jane?

T: What ...?

S: What is your daughter called?

- 1 my daughter's called Jane. (What)
- 2 she had a surprise last year. (When)
- 3 she received a letter from Holland. (What) (Where ...from)
- 4 it was from a girl of her own age. (Who)
- 5 we were travelling across the Channel last year. (When) (Where)
- 6 Jane put a note into a bottle. (Where)
- 7 she'd written her name and address on it. (What) (Who)
- 8 she threw it into the sea. (Where)
- 9 she forgot about it. (What)
- 10 she received a letter ten months later. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: accuse him of -the theft

S1: Someone must accuse him of the theft.

S2: He's already been accused of it.

cure him of -his bad habits/lying

assure them of -our support/our help

warn him of -the danger/difficulties

convince him of -his mistake/the truth

2

T: demand help from this firm

S1: Will he demand help from this firm?

S2: He might. He's already demanded help from three firms.

escape from this prison/country

ask for help from our government/ministry

borrow from this bank/firm

receive money from that aunt/sister

3

T: sail -is interested

S1: Does she sail?

S2: Yes, she's interested in sailing.

teach/make plans -is experienced

pay the bills/pay the rent -shares

travel/read/enjoy herself -believes

shock people/work hard -delights

4

T: consult him on -buying a house

S1: What did they consult him on?

S2: I think they consulted him on buying a house.

economize on -taxis/cigarettes

live on -her salary/fruit

write on -the cost of living/noise

decide on -staying here/going home

Tell the story

- 1 daughter -never dreamed -letter -girl -age -Holland
- 2 Last year -travelling -Channel -piece of paper -name -bottle
- 3 threw -bottle -sea
- 4 never thought -again -later -letter -Holland
- 5 Both -write -now
- 6 However -decided -post office
- 7 Letters -cost -travel faster

Topics for discussion

- 1 Imagine a situation when it might be necessary to send a message in a bottle.
- 2 Students in England often work for the post office during the Christmas holidays. What sorts of jobs do students in your country do during their vacations?

Key to Summary writing

Jane crossed the Channel last year. She threw a bottle into the sea. It contained a piece of paper with her name and address on it. Ten months later, she received a letter from a girl in Holland. They write to each other regularly now. They send their letters by post.

Lesson 23 A new house

Comprehension questions

- 1 You had a letter yesterday, didn't you? (Yes, I did.)
- 2 Who was it from? (My sister.)
- 3 Where does she live?.(In Nigeria.)
- 4 Did she say she would come to England? (Yes, she did.)
- 5 When did she say she would come? (Next year.)
- 6 Will she get a surprise if she comes? (Yes, she will.)
- 7 You're living in a beautiful new house, aren't you? (Yes, I am.)
- 8 Is it in the town or the country? (In the country.)
- 9 When was it completed? (Five months ago.)
- 10 Had work on it begun before your sister left? (Yes, it had.)
- 11 What did you tell her in your letter? (That she could stay with us.)
- 12 Are the rooms large or small? (Large.)
- 13 What kind of garden is there? (A lovely garden.)

Asking Questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I had a letter from my sister yesterday.

S: Did you have a letter from your sister yesterday?

T: When ...?

S: When did you have a letter from your sister?

- 1 I had a letter from my sister yesterday. (When) (What) (Who...from)
- 2 she lives in Nigeria. (Where) (Who)
- 3 she said she'd come to England next year. (When) (Who)
- 4 she'll get a surprise if she comes. (Why)
- 5 we're now living in the country. (Where)
- 6 we've got a beautiful new house. (What kind of) (Who)
- 7 it was begun before my sister left. (When)
- 8 it was completed five months ago. (How long ago) (What)
- 9 I told my sister she could stay with us. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: pay for lunch

S1: Who'll be paying for lunch?

S2: Don't worry! Mr. Bates will pay for it. He said he would.

teach our class see the manager

water the flowers pay the bill

buy the tickets look after Joe

repair the engine collect the money

2

T: pay him

S1: Shall we pay him if he comes today?

S2: Yes, we must pay him if he comes.

speak to him ask him to the party

tell him the news give him a meal

ring up Mary invite him to dinner

take him with us congratulate him

3

T: going out

S1: Someone's going out. It must be John.

S2: It can't be John. He promised me he wouldn't go out today.

having a bath watching television

cooking lunch washing the car

using the phone waiting outside

playing the piano making a noise

4

T: attend the lecture

S1: Can you attend the lecture tonight?

S2: I may as well attend it. I've nothing else to do tonight.

do the reports go to the meeting

give them a lesson accompany Mary

read the play put the shelf up

write him a letter study the plans

Tell the story

- 1 letter -sister -Nigeria
- 2 said -to England -year
- 3 If -comes -a surprise
- 4 We -new house -country
- 5 work -before -sister left
- 6 house -completed -ago
- 7 my letter -told her -could stay
- 8 house -large rooms -lovely garden
- 9 very modern -strange -some people
- 10 must be -modern house -district

Topics for discussion

- 1 What do you do to welcome a visitor to your home?
- 2 Would you rather live in an old house or a modern house? Why?
- 3 Imagine you are coming home after living abroad for some time. What would you want to do?

Key to Summary writing

My sister will come to England next year. She will get a surprise if she comes. We have a new house in the country. I have invited my sister to stay with us. It is a very modern house. It has got many large rooms and a lovely garden.

Lesson 24 It could be worse

Comprehension questions

- 1 Whose office did you enter? (The hotel manager's.)
- 2 Why did you feel upset? (I had lost fifty pounds.)
- 3 Where had you left the money? (In my room.)
- 4 Was it still there? (No, it wasn't.)
- 5 Who was sympathetic? (The manager was.)
- 6 Could he do anything to help you? (No, he couldn't.)
- 7 What did he say to you? ('Everyone's losing money these days.')
- 8 What did he start to complain about? (This wicked world.)
- 9 What was he interrupted by? (A knock at the door.)
- 10 Who was it? (A girl.)
- 11 What had she got in her hand? (An envelope.)
- 12 Where did she put it? (On the manager's desk.)
- 13 What did it contain? (Fifty pounds.)
- 14 Where had she found it? (Outside my room.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I entered the hotel manager's office.

S: Did you enter the hotel manager's office?

T: Whose ...?

S: Whose office did you enter?

1 I entered the hotel manager's office. (Whose) (Who) (Why)

2 I sat down. (What ...do) (Who)

3 I'd just lost £ 50. (What) (How much)

4 felt very upset. (Why)

5 I'd left the money in my room. (Where)

6 the manager was sympathetic. (Who)

7 he could do nothing. (What)

8 everyone was losing money. (What)

9 he started to complain about this wicked world. (What) (Why)

10 he was interrupted by a knock at the door. (What)

11 a girl came in. (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: take tea

S1: Except for me, does everyone take tea?

S2: Yes, everyone takes it except you.

play golf want whisky

eat apples have glasses

like ice cream drink milk

speak French appreciate music

2

T: put away -your books

S1: I asked you to put away your books.

S2: I've already put them away.

give away -your stamps/toys/tools

send away -those workmen/children

pull down -that building/wall/house

throw away -that rubbish/old coat

3

T: frightening experience

S1: Was it a frightening experience?

S2: Yes, it was. We all got very frightened.

interesting -lecture/talk/meeting

exciting -match/fight/race/game

tiring -journey/walk/holiday/drive

boring -lesson/play/programme

4

T: at the door -a knock

S1: There isn't anyone at the door.

S2: But I heard a knock!

S1: Nonsense! There's no one there!

in the garden/in the garage -a voice

outside/by the gate -footsteps

upstairs/in the bedroom -a noise

in trouble/in pain -a scream

Tell the story

- 1 entered -office -sat down
- 2 just - £ 50 -very upset
- 3 left -my room -not there now
- 4 manager -sympathetic -nothing
- 5 'Everyone -money' -said
- 6 complain -world -interrupted -knock
- 7 girl -envelope -desk
- 8 It - £ 50
- 9 'found -outside -room,' -said
- 10 I -manager 'still honesty -world!'

Topics for discussion

- 1 What sort of complaints do you think a hotel manager has to deal with?
- 2 When you travel, how do you look after your money?
- 3 Do you think the world is 'wicked'? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

I had just lost £ 50. I felt very upset. I told the manager about it. He could not do anything. He began to complain about this wicked world. Just then a girl came in with the money. She had found it outside my room. There is still some honesty in this world.

Lesson 25 Do the English speak English?

Comprehension questions

- 1 Did you arrive in London or Portsmouth? (London.)
- 2 What was the railway station like? (Big, black and dark.)
- 3 Did you know your way to your hotel? (No, I didn't.)
- 4 Did you ask a porter the way? (Yes, I did.)
- 5 What language did you speak to him in? (English.)
- 6 How did you speak? (Very carefully and clearly.)
- 7 Could the porter understand you? (No, he couldn't.)
- 8 Did you repeat your question? (Yes, I did.)
- 9 Did he answer you? (Yes, he did.)
- 10 Did he speak quickly at first? (Yes, he did.)
- 11 What did you tell him? ('I am a foreigner.')
- 12 Why couldn't you understand him? (My teacher never spoke English like that.)
- 13 What did you and the porter do then? (We looked at each other and smiled.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if it took me a long time to reach London.

S: Did it take you a long time to reach London?

T: How long ...?

S: How long did it take you to reach London?

1 it took me a long time to reach London. (How long)

2 I arrived by train. (How) (Who)

3 the railway station was big, black and dark. (What) (What like)

4 I spoke to a porter. (Who) (Why) (When)

5 I asked him the way to my hotel. (What)

6 I spoke very carefully. (How)

7 I repeated my questions several times. (How many times) (What)

8 he understood at last. (When)

9 he spoke to me very quickly. (How)

10 we looked at each other. (Who)

11 we smiled. (What ...do)

Pattern drill

1

T : look at

S1: He's looking at her.

S2: Yes, and she's looking at HIM.

They're looking at each other.

speak to listen to learn from smile at

watch teach help take to

2

T: John plays tennis. I do too.

S1: Both John and I play tennis.

S2: Then you can play each other!

Bob understands English. I do too.

Sue teaches maths. You do too.

Mary paints portraits. Jane does too.

Jill criticizes people. I do too.

3

T: eat the biscuit

S1: Either you or I can eat the biscuit.

S2: Yes, we can't both eat it.

eat the apple/cake

buy the last loaf/cake

use the ticket for the film/concert

win the race/first prize

4

T: go to the film

S1: Did either of them go to the film?

S2: No, neither of them went to it.

see the play write him a letter

have lunch water the garden

read the book weep the room

meet the president pass the exam

Tell the story

- 1 arrived-London-at last
- 2 didn't know -asked -porter
- 3 not only -carefully -clearly
- 4 porter couldn't -and so -repeated
- 5 answered -but -neither -nor
- 6 told him -I -foreigner
- 7 Then -slowly -not understand
- 8 teacher never -like that
- 9 soon learn -porter said
- 10 English -each other -but I

Topics for discussion

- 1 A foreigner asks you the way from the station to your school. Explain it to him.
- 2 Have you ever been abroad/away from home? Describe some of your difficulties.
- 3 'In England each man speaks a different language.' What does this mean? Talk about the different 'languages' in your country.

Key to Summary writing

I arrived at a railway station in London and asked a porter the way to my hotel, but he could not understand me. He understood me at last, but I could not understand his answer. My teacher never spoke English like that. The porter said that I would soon learn English. Each man speaks a different language in England. They understand each other, but I do not understand them.

Lesson 26 The best art critics

Comprehension questions

- 1 What do you do? (I'm an art student.)
- 2 Do you paint many pictures? (Yes, I do.)
- 3 What do many people pretend to understand? (Modern art.)
- 4 What do they always tell you? (What a picture is 'about'.)
- 5 Are all pictures 'about' something? (No, they aren't.)
- 6 What are many pictures? (Just pretty patterns.)
- 7 Do you think young children appreciate modern pictures more than grown-ups do? (Yes, they do.)
- 8 Why do they? (They notice more.)
- 9 How old is your sister? (Seven.)
- 10 What does she always tell you? (Whether my pictures are good or bad.)
- 11 When did she come into your room? (Yesterday.)
- 12 What were you doing? (Hanging a picture on the wall.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I'm an art student.

S: Are you an art student?

T: What...do?

S: What do you do?

1 I'm an art student. (What ...do)

2 I paint a lot of pictures. (What ...do) (How many) (Why)

3 many people understand modern art. (What) (Who) (How many)

4 they tell you what a picture is about. (What) (Who) (Why)

5 they're just pretty patterns. (What)

6 young children often appreciate modern art better than adults.
(Who) (What)

7 they notice more. (What) (Who)

8 my sister is seven. (How old)

9 she came into my room yesterday. (When)

10 she looked at my new painting. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: he's lying

S1: I think he's lying.

S2: I'm sure he is. He often lies.

he's going to town/going for a walk

she's doing her hair/trying to slim

they're watching TV/playing cards

he's taking her out/getting angry

2

T: drive a car -own it

S1: He's driving a car! He must own it!

S2: He's driving it -but he doesn't own it.

listen to that music/CD -like it

eat this food/fruit -like it

buy that book/newspaper -approve of it

read that poem/article -understand it

3

T: fish lay eggs

S1: Do you believe that fish lay eggs?

S2: Of course I do. Everyone knows that they do.

hot air rises milk contains fat

cats eat grass sugar makes us fat

4

T: forget her face -trying

S1: I can't forget her face.

S2: That's because you aren't really trying.

hear any music/voices -listening

remember his name/address -thinking

see any mistakes/anything wrong -looking

understand this poem/picture -trying

Tell the story

- 1 student -paint -pictures
- 2 people -pretend -modern art
- 3 many -not 'about' anything
- 4 children -appreciate -better
- 5 sister -seven -tells -good or not
- 6 room -yesterday
- 7 I -hanging -picture -wall
- 8 looked -critically -moment
- 9 asked me -upside down
- 10 I -again -she -right

Topics for discussion

- 1 How is your room at home decorated? What do you have on your walls?
- 2 Name some 'modern' painters. Explain why you like or dislike their work.
- 3 Do you think artists should try to 'please' other people? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer studies art and paints a lot of pictures. Many people do not really understand modern art. Paintings do not always have a meaning. They are sometimes pretty patterns. Young children not only appreciate modern paintings better than others but they notice more. The writer's young sister went into his room yesterday and examined his new picture. He had hung it upside down and she noticed this immediately.

Lesson 27 A wet night

Comprehension questions

- 1 When did the boys put up their tent? (Late in the afternoon.)
- 2 Where did they put it up? (In the middle of a field.)
- 3 What did they do next? (They cooked a meal.)
- 4 Did they all feel hungry? (Yes, they did.)
- 5 What smelled good? (The food did.)
- 6 What did they do after their meal? (They told stories and sang songs.)
- 7 When did it begin to rain? (Some time later.)
- 8 Why did the boys put out the fire? (Because they felt tired.)
- 9 Why did they all sleep soundly? (Because their sleeping bags were warm and comfortable.)
- 10 When did two of the boys wake up? (In the middle of the night.)
- 11 Why did they begin shouting? (Because the tent was full of water.)
- 12 What did all the boys do? (They leapt out of their sleeping bags and hurried outside.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if they put up their tent late in the afternoon.

S: Did they put up their tent late in the afternoon?

T: When ...?

S: When did they put up their tent?

1 the boys put up their tent late in the afternoon. (When) (What)

2 it was in the middle of a field. (Where)

3 they cooked a meal. (What)

4 they cooked it over an open fire. (How)

5 they told stories afterwards. (What ...do)

6 they sang songs too. (What else)

7 they sat round the campfire. (Where)

8 it began to rain later. (When)

9 the boys felt tired. (How)

10 they put out the fire. (Why)

11 they all slept soundly. (How) (Who)

12 two boys woke up. (Who) (Why) (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: meet Mr. Jones -at a party

S1: Where did you meet Mr. Jones?

S2: I met him at a party last week.

see Mrs. Jones/the dog -in the park

lose your money/watch-at the office

buy that magazine/ticket -at the station

leave the parcel/your bag-at the airport

2

T: meet Mrs. Jones -last night

S1: When did you meet Mrs. Jones?

S2: I met her last night.

paint the picture/house -last year

buy/wash that dress-yesterday

give the party/concert -in January

finish/write the essay-last week

3

T: laugh at jokes

S1: He always laughs at jokes.

S2: Oh, does he? He didn't laugh at my joke yesterday. attend

concerts enjoy meals buy pictures listen to advice

4

T: laugh at my joke

S1: He didn't laugh at my joke just now.

S2: Oh, didn't he? I thought he always laughed at jokes. welcome

the guest look at the picture remember her name accept my invitation

Tell the story

- 1 Late -boys -tent -field
- 2 done -cooked -open fire
- 3 After -stories -songs -fire
- 4 later -rain
- 5 tied -put out -crept -tent
- 6 sleeping bags -slept soundly
- 7 middle -woke -because -water
- 8 All -leapt out -outside
- 9 raining heavily -stream -field
- 10 wound its way across -under -tent

Topics for discussion

- 1 What must you take with you when you go on a camping expedition?
- 2 Imagine you are sitting round a campfire with some friends. Tell an entertaining story.
- 3 What are the advantages and disadvantages of a camping holiday?

Key to Summary writing

The boys put up their tent in the middle of a field and cooked a meal. After their meal they told stories and sang songs but it began to rain so they crept into their tent. The boys woke up in the middle of the night. The tent was full of water so they rushed outside. A stream had formed in the field and flowed right under their tent.

Lesson 28 No parking

Comprehension questions

- 1 Are there many people who believe in ancient myths?
(No, there aren't.)
- 2 Does Jasper White believe in them? (Yes, he does.)
- 3 What's he just bought? (A new house.)
- 4 Where is it? (In the city.)
- 5 Since when has he had trouble with cars and their owners?
(Since he moved in.)
- 6 What does he always find when he comes home in the evenings?
(That someone has parked a car outside his gate.)
- 7 Is this why he's never been able to get his car into his garage? (Yes, it is.)
- 8 What's he put up outside his gate? ('No Parking' signs.)
- 9 Have they had any effect or not? (No, they haven't.)
- 10 Where has he put a stone head? (Over the gate.)
- 11 What's it like? (Very ugly.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Jasper White believes in ancient myths.

S: Does Jasper White believes in ancient myths?

T: What ...?

S: What does Jasper White believe in?

- 1 Jasper White believes in ancient myths. (What) (What kind) (Who)
- 2 he's just bought a new house. (What)
- 3 it's in the city. (Where) (What)
- 4 he's had trouble since he moved in. (What) (What kind) (Why)
- 5 he's had trouble with cars and their owners. (Who)
- 6 they park outside his gate. (Where)
- 7 this happens every night. (How often)
- 8 he's put up 'No Parking' signs. (What)
- 9 they're outside his gate. (Where)
- 10 he's put an ugly stone head over the gate. (What kind) (Where) (Why)
- 11 I asked him what it was. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: ugly man -seen

S1: He's an ugly man, isn't he?

S2: Yes, he's one of the ugliest men I've ever seen.

pretty girl -met dull book -read

bad photo -taken nice boy -known

smart coat -worn nice prize -won

fast car -driven good meal -had

2

T: an ugly man -seen

S1: What an ugly man!

S2: Yes, I've never seen such an ugly man before!

a silly story -read a good film -seen

a high note -sung noisy people -met

a bad meal -eaten bad luck -had

fresh milk -drunk lovely music -heard

3

T: known him -since childhood

S1: How long have you known him?

S2: I've known him since childhood.

owned a car/bicycle -for six months

worked here/at the library -for a week

studied the violin/piano -for two years

been a doctor/teacher -since 1989

4

T: seen that film

S1: How many times have you seen that film?

S2: I've seen it three times so far.

given that speech had that dream

written to diary broken your leg

worn that dress met my boss

taken the exams flown that plane

Tell the story

- 1 Jasper -rare people -myths
- 2 just bought -house -city -ever since -trouble -cars and their owners
- 3 home -night -someone -car -gate
- 4 not able -own car -garage
- 5 'No Parking' -gate -no effect
- 6 put -stone head -gate
- 7 asked him -told me -Medusa
- 8 hopes -car owners -to stone
- 9 none -stone -yet

Topics for discussion

- 1 Is there anything that annoys you very much about other people's behaviour? Tell us about it.
- 2 What 'rules' would you like to make for cars and their owners? Give your reasons.
- 3 Can you think of any 'modern' myths? Tell us one.

Key to Summary writing

Jasper White believes in ancient myths. Car owners always park their cars outside his gate, so he has put up 'No Parking' signs but they have not paid any attention to them. Now he has put an ugly stone head over his gate. It is the head of Medusa, the Gorgon. He wants her to turn car owners to stone but she has not done so yet.

Lesson 29 Taxi

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who's bought an unusual taxi? (Captain Ben Fawcett has.)
- 2 What has he begun? (A new service.)
- 3 What is the 'taxi' in fact? (A small aeroplane.)
- 4 Where was it made? (In Switzerland.)
- 5 What is it called? (A 'Pilatus Porter'.)
- 6 How many passengers can it carry? (Seven.)
- 7 Where can it land? (Anywhere.)
- 8 Who was the Captain's first passenger? (A doctor.)
- 9 Where did he fly from? (Birmingham.)
- 10 Where did he fly to? (A lonely village in the Welsh mountains.)
- 11 What's Captain Fawcett done since then? (He's flown passengers to many unusual places.)
- 12 Has he ever landed on a roof? (Yes, he has.)
- 13 Where else has he landed? (In a deserted car park.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Captain Ben Fawcett has begun a new taxi service.

S: Has Captain Ben Fawcett begun a new taxi service?

T: Who ...?

S: Who has begun a new taxi service?

- 1 Captain Ben Fawcett has begun a new taxi service. (Who) (What)
- 2 he has bought an unusual taxi. (What)
- 3 it's a small aeroplane. (What)
- 4 it comes from Switzerland. (Where)
- 5 it's called a 'Pilatus Porter'. (What)
- 6 it can carry seven passengers. (How many)
- 7 it can land anywhere. (Where)
- 8 it can land on snow or water. (What)
- 9 the Captain's first passenger was a doctor. (Who)
- 10 he flew to a lonely village in the Welsh mountains. (Where) (Who)
- 11 he flew from Birmingham. (Where ...from)

Pattern drill

1

T: posted your letter -stamped

S1: I've posted your letter.

S2: I hope you stamped it before you posted it.

eaten those apples -washed/peeled

put the plates away -washed/dried

painted the door -cleaned/mended

sent that letter off -signed/read

2

T: worked in a bank

S1: Have you ever worked in a bank?

S2: I worked in one for two months once.

owned a horse driven a Toyota

lived in a flat lived on a farm

kept a cat stayed at a hotel

had a bad cold had a pen friend

3

T : No one's seen Tim -he's moved ,

S1: Has anyone seen Tim?

S2: He hasn't been seen since he moved.

dusted the room/hall -the maid's left

missed Mary/Mrs. Jones -she's gone away

cleared the road/path -it's snowed

mended the stereo/TV -Jane's broken it

4

T: write the essay

S1: Did it take long to write the essay?

S2: I wrote it in two hours. I've never written an essay so quickly before.

paint the picture read the book

write the poem catch the thief

do the job make the dress

clean the garage mend the TV

Tell the story

- 1 Captain Fawcett -unusual -new service
- 2 'taxi' -Swiss - 'Pilatus Porter'
- 3 wonderful -seven passengers
- 4 most surprising -land anywhere
- 5 first -doctor -Birmingham ---mountains
- 6 Since then -flown -unusual places
- 7 Once -flats -another -car park
- 8 refused -strange -businessman
- 9 wanted -Rockall -Atlantic -didn't take-dangerous

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever flown in an aeroplane? Did you enjoy it? Why/Why not?
- 2 What are the advantages/disadvantages of air travel?
- 3 What do you think air travel will be like in the future (e.g. private helicopters, supersonic flight, journeys to the moon, etc.)?

Key to Summary writing

Captain Ben Fawcett has bought a small Swiss aeroplane and (he) uses it as a taxi. It is a 'Pilatus Porter'. It can not only carry seven passengers but also land anywhere. Captain Fawcett has taken passengers to many strange places in his plane. He refused to fly a businessman to Rockall. The journey was too dangerous.

Lesson 30 Football or polo?

Comprehension questions

- 1 Is there a park near your home? (Yes, there is.)
- 2 What is the Wayle? (A small river.)
- 3 Does it cut across the park?(Yes, it does.)
- 4 What do you like doing on fine afternoons? (Sitting by the Wayle.)
- 5 What did you do last Sunday? (I went and sat on the river bank.)
- 6 It was a warm day, wasn't it? (Yes, it was.)
- 7 What were some children doing? (Playing games.)
- 8 Who was rowing on the river? (Some people were.)
- 9 What did one of the children do? (He kicked the ball very hard.)
- 10 Where did the ball go? (It went towards a passing boat.)
- 11 Who shouted at the man in the boat? (Some people on the bank did.)
- 12 Did he hear them? (No, he didn't.)
- 13 Why did he nearly fall into the water? (Because the ball struck him hard.)
- 14 Why did you turn? (To look at the children.)
- 15 Where were the children? (They were not in sight.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if there is a park near my home.

S: Is there a park near your home?

T: Where ...?

S: Where is there a park?

1 there's a park near my home. (Where)

2 the Wayle cuts across it. (What)

3 the Wayle is a small river. (How big)

4 I like sitting by the Wayle on fine afternoons. (When) (Where) (Who)

5 I went to the park last Sunday. (When)

6 I sat on the river bank. (Where) (When)

7 some children were playing games on the bank. (Where) (What)(Who)

8 one of the children kicked a ball very hard. (How hard) (What) (Who)

9 it went towards a passing boat. (Where)

10 some people called out to the man. (What ...do) (Why) (Who ...to)

Pattern drill

1

T: soap -in the bathroom

S1: Is there any soap?

S2: Yes, there's some in the bathroom.

meat/cheese -in the fridge

ink/paper -on the shelf

food/soup -on the table

sugar/salt -in the bowl

2

T: nails -in that tin

S1: Can I borrow some nails?

S2: I haven't got any here, but there are some in that tin.

books/magazines -on the desk

shorts/trousers -in the cupboard

knives/forks -in that drawer

bottles/tins -in the garage

3

T: the Yangtze -a river in China

S1: What's the Yangtze?

S2: It's a river in China.

the Danube/Rhine -a river in Europe

the Alps -a mountain range in Europe

the Sahara/Kalahari -a desert in Africa

the Thames/Avon -a river in England

4

T: rough sea today

S1: The sea is very rough today!

S2: Yes, I've never seen such a rough sea before.

pale sun/blue sky -today

thick fog/heavy mist -this morning

dark sky/bright moon -tonight

calm sea/strong wind -today

Tell the story

- 1 The Wayle -river -across the park
- 2 like -by the Wayle -fine
- 3 warm -Sunday -went -as usual
- 4 children -games -people -river
- 5 Suddenly -ball -passing boat
- 6 people -called -man -not hear
- 7 ball -so hard -nearly -fell
- 8 turned -children -run away
- 9 man laughed -realized
- 10 called -threw -back

Topics for discussion

- 1 Imagine the following situation: The man in the story thought the children had kicked the ball towards him on purpose. Retell the rest of the story.
- 2 What kind of games do you like playing? Why? Tell us how to play your favourite game.

Key to Summary writing

The writer sat by the river last Sunday. Some children were playing games nearby. One of the children kicked a ball hard and it went towards a passing boat. The man in the boat neither saw the ball nor heard people shouting. The ball hit the man and the children ran away. However, the man was not angry and he threw the ball back to the bank.

Lesson 31 Success story

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who were you talking to yesterday afternoon? (Frank Hawkins.)
- 2 What was he telling you about? (His experience as a young man.)
- 3 What is Frank now head of? (A very large business company.)
- 4 Where did he use to work as a boy? (In a small shop.)
- 5 What was his job? (To repair bicycles.)
- 6 Did he use to work long hours? (Yes, he did.)
- 7 Did he save his money or spend it? (He saved it.)
- 8 What did he buy with his money? (A small workshop.)
- 9 When did he buy it? (In 1958.)
- 10 What did he do in his twenties? (He used to make spare parts for aeroplanes.)
- 11 How many helpers did he have then? (Two.)
- 12 How many people did he employ in a few years? (Seven hundred and twenty-eight.)
- 13 What had his small workshop become? (A large factory.)
- 14 Frank's been successful, hasn't he? (Yes, he has.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I was with Frank Hawkins yesterday afternoon.

S: Were you with Frank Hawkins yesterday afternoon?

T: Who ...?

S: Who were you with yesterday afternoon?

1 I was with Frank Hawkins yesterday afternoon. (Who) (When)

2 he was describing his experiences as a young man.
(What) (When) (Who)

3 he's now head of a business company. (What) (Who)

4 it's very, large. (How big) (What)

5 he used to work in a small shop as a boy. (Where) (When) (Who)

6 he repaired bicycles. (What) (Where)

7 he used to work fourteen hours a day. (How many) (Who)

8 he saved money for years. (How long)

9 he bought a small workshop. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: at lunchtime -shopping

S1: What were you doing at lunchtime?

I was looking for you everywhere.

S2: I was shopping.

at two o'clock -having lunch/reading

this morning -seeing the doctor/working

on Saturday -resting/out walking

yesterday -fishing/writing my book

2

T: rain -returned from work

S1: When did it begin to rain?

S2: It was just beginning to rain when I returned from work.

snow -got up/went out this morning

get dark -came in/put the car away

rain -arrived home/left the office

get windy -finished work/phoned you

3

T: collect stamps

S1: Do you collect stamps?

S2: I used to, but I don't any longer.

ride a bicycle travel a lot

make your own clothes watch television

like Mary write poetry

go to concerts use a typewriter

4

T: taxi driver

S1: I used to be a taxi driver.

S2: Did you really? I didn't even know you could drive!

champion boxer opera singer

part-time actor art teacher

professional dancer long-distance runner

good swimmer portrait painter

Tell the story

- 1 Yesterday -Frank -experiences
- 2 now -head of -boy -small shop
- 3 repair bicycles -14 hours a day
- 4 saved -1958 -workshop of his own
- 5 in his twenties -spare parts -aeroplanes
- 6 that time -two helpers
- 7 a few years -large factory -728 people
- 8 smiled -early years -long -success
- 9 still smiling -wife came
- 10 wanted -repair -son's bicycle

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe some of the things you used to do when you were young.
- 2 What qualities must a person have to build up a successful business?
- 3 What kind of success would you like to have in life? Talk about it.

Key to Summary writing

Frank Hawkins was telling the writer about his experiences as a young man. Frank used to work in a small shop as a boy. He used to repair bicycles there. He bought his own shop in 1958 and he made spare parts for aeroplanes in his twenties. He employed a lot of people in a few years. His wife came into the room after a while. She wanted him to repair their grandson's bicycle.

Lesson 32 Shopping made easy

Comprehension questions

- 1 Are people more honest than they were? (No, they aren't.)
- 2 What temptation is greater than ever before? (To steal.)
- 3 Where are people especially tempted to steal? (In large shops.)
- 4 Whom did a detective watch recently? (A well-dressed woman.)
- 5 Where did she always go on Mondays? (To a large store.)
- 6 Why was it easier for the detective to watch her one Monday morning?
(There were fewer people in the shop than usual.)
- 7 What did she do first? (She bought a few small articles.)
- 8 What did she choose next? (One of the most expensive dresses.)
- 9 Did she hand it to an assistant? (Yes, she did.)
- 10 What did the assistant do? (She wrapped it up quickly.)
- 11 The woman took the parcel, didn't she? (Yes, she did.)
- 12 Had she paid for the dress? (No, she hadn't.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if people are less honest than they were.

S: Are people less honest than they were?

T: Why ...?

S: Why are people less honest than they were?

- 1 people are less honest than they were. (Why) (Who)
- 2 the temptation to steal is greater than ever before. (What) (Why)
- 3 a woman was arrested recently. (Who)
- 4 a detective watched her in a large store. (Who) (Where)
- 5 she always went there on Monday mornings. (When) (Where) (Why)
- 6 there were fewer people in the shop than usual. (How many) (Where)
- 7 it was easier to watch her. (Why)
- 8 the woman bought a few small articles. (How many) (What Kind)

Pattern drill

1

T: honest

S1: People aren't so honest as they used to be.

S2: No, they're becoming less honest.

critical helpful contented hard-working
careful polite kind ambitious

2

T: had accidents -drive much

S1: I haven't had as many accidents as you have.

S2: No, but you don't drive as much.

seen places/cities -travel much
bought books/magazines -read much
won matches/prizes -practise hard
passed exams/tests -study hard

3

T: ink/eggs

S1: There isn't much ink/aren't many eggs.

S2: That's all right. I only want a little/a few.

paper bread tea sugar
apples biscuits magazines flowers

4

T: street -traffic/cars

S1: Is the street as busy as usual?

S2: No, there's less traffic/are fewer cars than there usually is/are.

airport -people/noise/travellers
police station -trouble/thieves
office -work/phone calls
factory -work/workers

Tell the story

- 1 People -not so honest -once
- 2 temptation -greater -large shops
- 3 detective -woman -store -Monday
- 4 fewer people -easier for -to watch
- 5 First -woman -a few -articles
- 6 After -chose -most expensive -assistant wrapped -as quickly as
- 7 Then -took -walked out -without
- 8 arrested -found out -her daughter
- 9 'gave' -free -once a week

Topics for discussion

- 1 Why do you think the temptation to steal is greater in a large store than a small shop?
- 2 What times of the day/days of the week are the shops most crowded in your town? Why?
- 3 Do you agree that people are not so honest as before? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

A detective watched a well-dressed woman in a large store one Monday. She bought a few small articles and then she chose an expensive dress. The assistant wrapped it up for her and the woman took it with her. She did not pay for it, so the detective arrested her. The assistant was her daughter. She gave her mother a free dress once a week.

Lesson 33 Out of the darkness

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where did the girl set out from one afternoon? (From the coast.)
- 2 Was she in a small boat or a large one? (In a small boat.)
- 3 She was caught in a storm, wasn't she? (Yes, she was.)
- 4 What did her boat strike? (A rock.)
- 5 What time of day was it? (Evening.)
- 6 Which way did she swim? (Towards the shore.)
- 7 How long did she spend in the water? (The whole night.)
- 8 How far did she swim? (Eight miles.)
- 9 When did she see a light ahead of her? (Early next morning.)
- 10 How did she know she was near the shore? (The light was high up on the cliffs.)
- 11 What did she climb up? (The cliff.)
- 12 Where was she trying to get to? (To the light.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if it was afternoon.

S: Was it afternoon?

T: What time of day ...?

S: What time of day was it?

1 it was afternoon. (What time of day)

2 a girl set out from the coast. (Where)

3 she was in a small boat. (What) (Who)

4 she was caught in a storm. (What) (When)

5 the boat struck a rock. (What) (Why)

6 this happened towards evening. (When)

7 she jumped into the sea. (Where)

8 she swam to the shore. (Which way)

9 she spent the whole night in the water. (Where) (How long)

10 she swam eight miles. (How far)

11 she saw a light ahead early next morning. (When) (What) (Where)

12 she was near the shore. (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: getting on his bicycle -off

S1: Look, John's getting on his bicycle.

S2: I hope he won't fall off.

climbing up the tree/wall -down

playing near the river/lake -in

sleeping in that bed/boat -out

standing on the ice/roof -through

2

T: room

S1: I didn't see you come into the room.

S2: That's because you weren't in the room when I came in!

classroom restaurant kitchen sitting room

library office shop waiting room

3

T: into the garden -went round

S1: How did you get into the garden?

S2: We didn't. We went round it.

through the fence -climbed

over/under over the gate -drove through/round

over the wall -walked round/along across

the road -walked under/along

4

T: the school -a book shop

S1: Did you stop anywhere on your way to the school?

S2: Yes, I stopped at a book shop.

the office -the bank/garage

the library -a supermarket/cafe

the station -a baker's/chemist's

the park -some traffic lights/shops

Tell the story

- 1 week -able to explain -happened
- 2 One afternoon -small boat -storm
- 3 evening -boat -rock -jumped
- 4 swam -shore -whole night -water
- 5 During -distance -eight miles
- 6 next morning -light ahead
- 7 knew -near -light -cliffs
- 8 On arriving -up the cliff -light
- 9 That -all -remembered
- 10 day later -found -in hospital

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever been out to sea in a small boat? Tell us about it.
- 2 What do you think happened to the girl from the time she reached the shore to the time she woke up in hospital?
- 3 Imagine you are the girl. Give your 'story' to some newspaper reporters.

Key to Summary writing

The girl set out from the coast one afternoon and was caught in a storm. Her boat struck a rock, so she jumped into the sea. She swam eight miles that night. She reached the shore early next morning. She had seen a light high up on the cliffs and she climbed up. She found herself in hospital a day later.

Lesson 34 Quick work

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who has been worrying? (Dan Robinson has.)
- 2 How long has he been worried? (All week.)
- 3 When did he receive a letter? (Last Tuesday.)
- 4 Who was it from? (The local police.)
- 5 What did Dan wonder? (Why he was wanted by the police.)
- 6 When did he go to the station? (Yesterday.)
- 7 What was he told at the station? (That his bicycle had been found.)
- 8 Who told him this? (A smiling policeman did.)
- 9 When was the bicycle picked up? (Five days ago.)
- 10 How far from Dan's home was it? (Four hundred miles.)
- 11 Where is the bicycle being sent to? (To his home.)
- 12 How is it being sent? (By train.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Dan Robinson was worried.

S: Was Dan Robinson worried?

T: Who ...?

S: Who was worried?

- 1 Dan Robinson was worried. (Who) (Why)
- 2 he received a letter last Tuesday. (When) (What)
- 3 it was from the police. (Who)
- 4 he was asked to call at the station. (Where) (When) (Why)
- 5 he wondered why he was wanted by the police. (What)
- 6 he went to the station yesterday. (Where) (When)
- 7 the policeman smiled at him. (What ...do)
- 8 he told him that his bicycle had been found. (What) (Who)
- 9 it had been picked up five days ago. (How long ago) (Where) (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: come -three

S1: Mary's late. Was she told to come?

S2: Yes, she was told by at least three people.

pick us up -six be punctual -four

meet us -four be here -five

arrive on time -two telephone -three

fetch us -six hurry -twenty

2

T: leave home -told

S1: I hope John doesn't leave home today.

S2: He's been told not to leave home when the weather's like this.

go out/walk far/go for a ride -warned

drive anywhere/play football -asked

cut the grass/work outside -advised

go for a walk/go for a swim -told

3

T: They've found your keys.

S1: Your keys have been found.

S2: How extraordinary! I never expected them to be found.

accepted your plan arrested the thief

reached an agreement discovered a cure

published your story sold the house

solved the problem returned the books

4

T: They've found the keys -lost

S1: The keys have been found.

S2: I didn't know they'd been lost!

drunk the coffee/tea -made

mended the window/chair -broken

questioned the man/thief -caught

sent the report/document -written

Tell the story

- 1 Dan Robinson -worried -all week
- 2 Tuesday -letter -local police
- 3 letter -asked to call -station
- 4 went -yesterday -not worried
- 5 station -told -bicycle -found
- 6 told -five days ago -bicycle -picked up -four hundred miles away
- 7 now -sent home -train
- 8 Dan -surprised -never expected
- 9 stolen -twenty years ago -a boy

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever been worried because you had lost something?
What was it? Describe your feelings. Did you get it back? How?
- 2 How would you feel if you were asked to go to the police station?Why?
- 3 What are the advantages of owning a bicycle?

Key to Summary writing

Dan Robinson was worried. He had received a letter from the local police. Yesterday he went to the station. He is not worried any more. The police have found his bicycle. Dan was not only surprised but amused as well. His bicycle was stolen twenty years ago. He was fifteen then.

Lesson 35 Stop thief

Comprehension questions

- 1 What did Roy Trenton use to do? (Drive a taxi.)
- 2 What does he drive now? (A bus.)
- 3 Does he regret the change? (No, he doesn't.)
- 4 How is he finding his new work? (Far more exciting.)
- 5 Where was he driving recently? (Along Catford Street.)
- 6 Who did he see rush out of a shop? (Two thieves.)
- 7 Where did they run? (Towards a waiting car.)
- 8 What was one of them carrying? (A bag full of money.)
- 9 Which way did Roy drive his bus? (Straight at the thieves.)
- 10 Were the thieves frightened? (Yes, they were.)
- 11 What did the one with the money do? (He dropped the bag.)
- 12 Where did Roy drive his bus next? (Into the back of the thieves' car.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi.

S: Did Roy Trenton use to drive a taxi?

T: What ...?

S: What did Roy Trenton use to drive?

1 Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi. (What)

2 he changed his job recently. (Where)

3 he became a bus driver. (What)

4 he's finding his new work far more exciting. (How) (What)

5 he was driving along Catford Street recently. (Where) (When) (Who)

6 he saw two thieves. (What) (Where)

7 they rushed out of a shop. (What ...do)

8 they ran towards a waiting car. (Which way)

9 one of them was carrying a bag full of money. (What) (Why)

10 Roy acted quickly. (How) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: regret -the decision

S1: John hasn't regretted the decision yet. Do you regret it?

S2: No, I don't regret it.

understand -the situation/problem

recognize -that woman/man/voice

accept -the decision/result/score

forgive -his brother/sister/friend

2

T: pay the bill -yesterday

S1: Have you remembered to pay the bill?

S2: Of course I have. I paid it yesterday.

post/write the letters -this morning

wash up/dry the dishes -an hour ago

give in/do your homework -two days ago

mend/sell the radio -last Monday

3

T: very timid -dance

S1: He used to be very timid, so he didn't learn to dance for a long time.

S2: Well, he dances very well now.

afraid of water -swim/dive

very nervous -speak in public/drive

very shy -sing in concerts/act

very lazy -use a hammer/cook

4

T: spoil the lunch

S1: The lunch has been spoilt.

S2: Don't look at me! I didn't spoil it.

break the window steal the painting

eat the cakes scratch the record

damage the car tear the curtains

drink the milk sugar the coffee

Tell the story

- 1 Roy Trenton -used to -taxi
- 2 while ago -bus driver -more exciting
- 3 Catford St. -thieves -shop -car
- 4 One -carrying -full of money
- 5 Roy -quickly -drove -straight
- 6 one -money -fright -dropped
- 7 As -get away -drove his bus
- 8 While -moving away -telephoned
- 9 thieves' car -damaged -recognize
- 10 Shortly -police stopped -arrested

Topics for discussion

- 1 In your experience which are the better/worse drivers, taxi or bus drivers? Why?
- 2 Imagine you were a passenger on Roy Trenton's bus. Tell the story from your point of view.
- 3 What would you do if you saw some thieves? Would you try to stop them? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Roy is finding his new job as a bus driver exciting. He saw two thieves in Catford Street recently. They were running out of a shop and Roy drove his bus straight at them, so they dropped the stolen money and got into a car. Roy drove his bus into the back of their car then and damaged it. After this he telephoned the police. Both men were arrested later.

Lesson 36 Across the Channel

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who's going to swim across the English Channel tomorrow? (Debbie Hart is.)
- 2 Where's she going to set out from? (From the French coast.)
- 3 When will she set out? (At five in the morning.),
- 4 How old is Debbie? (Eleven.)
- 5 What does she hope to do? (To set up a new world record.)
- 6 Is she a strong swimmer? (Yes, she is.)
- 7 Do many people think she'll succeed? (Yes, they do.)
- 8 Who will set out with her? (Her father will.)
- 9 Will he swim or go in a small boat? (In a small boat.)
- 10 How long has he trained Debbie? (For years.)
- 11 How will he be watching her tomorrow? (Anxiously.)
- 12 Is it a short distance from France to England? (No, it isn't.)
- 13 How often does Debbie intend to take a rest? (Every two hours.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Debbie Hart is going to swim across the English Channel.

S: Is Debbie Hart going to swim across the English Channel?

T: Who ...?

S: Who is going to swim across the English Channel?

1 Debbie Hart is going to swim across the English Channel.

(Who) (When) (Why)

2 she is going to set out tomorrow. (When)

3 she will leave from the French coast. (Which coast) (When) (Who)

4 she'll start at five o'clock in the morning. (What time)

5 Debbie is eleven years old. (How old)

6 she hopes to set up a new record. (What)

7 she's a strong swimmer. (What kind of)

8 her father will set out with her. (Who)

9 he'll be in a small boat. (What) (Who)

10 he's trained his daughter for years. (How long) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: in the park -play football

S1: What do you intend to do in the park?

S2: We're going to play football.

on holiday -sit in the sun/rest all day

at the office -see the boss/work

at home -watch TV/help mother

at school -study English/play games

2

T: tidy the garden -sell the house

S1: Why doesn't he tidy the garden?

S2: He's decided not to because he's going to sell the house soon.

buy a car/house -leave the country

mend the car/radio -buy a new one

join our club/library -move from here

telephone Mary/Peter -see her/him

3

T: to eat -some food

S1: You won't forget to bring something to eat, will you?

S2: Don't worry! I'll bring some food.

to drink -some coffee/some tea

to write with -a pen/a pencil

to read -some magazines/some books

to sleep in -a sleeping bag/a blanket

4

T: drive -read the map

S1: I shan't be able to drive and read the map as well!

S2: I'll read the map while you drive.

look after the baby -cook lunch/get tea

wait for Tim -find a porter/buy tickets

meet Tom -prepare his room/meet Frank

wash the car -bath the dog/cut the grass

Tell the story

- 1 Debbie Hart -swim -Channel -tomorrow
- 2 set out -French -five -morning
- 3 only eleven -hopes -new record
- 4 father -with her -small boat
- 5 Mr. Hart -trained -for years
- 6 Tomorrow -watching -long distance
- 7 intends -short rests -two hours
- 8 something to drink -won't eat
- 9 friends -waiting -English coast
- 10 Among them -mother -swam -a girl

Topics for discussion

- 1 Debbie Hart illustrates the saying 'Like mother, like daughter (or: 'Like father, like son'). Tell us about someone you know who also illustrates this saying.
- 2 Do you 'train' for any sport? What does serious training for a sport involve?
- 3 Swimming is said to be the healthiest form of exercise. Do you agree? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Debbie Hart is going to swim across the English Channel tomorrow. She is eleven and she is a strong swimmer. Debbie has been trained by her father. He will follow her in a small boat. Debbie's mother will be waiting on the English coast. She swam the Channel herself when she was a girl.

Lesson 37 The Olympic Games

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where will the next Olympic Games be held? (In our country.)
- 2 When will they be held? (In four years' time.)
- 3 How many people will be visiting our country? (A great many people.)
- 4 What will the government be building for the visitors? (New hotels.)
- 5 What will the stadium be like? (Immense.)
- 6 There'll be a new Olympic-standard swimming pool, won't there?
(Yes, there will.)
- 7 What else will they be building? (New roads and a special railway line.)
- 8 Will the Games be held inside the capital, or just outside?
(Just outside.)
- 9 What will the whole area be called? ('Olympic City'.)
- 10 When will workers have completed the new roads?
(By the end of this year.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time.

S: Will the Olympic Games be held in our country in four years' time?

T: When ...?

S: When will the Olympic Games be held in our country?

1 the Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time.

(When) (Where)

2 a great many people will be visiting the country. (How many)

3 the government will be building new hotels. (What) (Why) (When)

4 the new stadium will be immense. (How big)

5 they'll be building a new Olympic-standard swimming pool. (What kind of)

6 new roads and a special railway line will be built. (What else)

7 the Games will be held just outside the capital. (Where) (What)

8 there'll be a new city. (What kind)

Pattern drill

1

T: writing your essay

S1: Will you still be writing your essay at six?

S2: No, I'll have written it by then.

reading the papers mowing the lawn

washing the dishes doing the crossword

mending the radio preparing supper

painting the gate ironing the clothes

2

T: build the stadium -Games

S1: They've started to build the stadium.

S2: I hope they'll have finished it in time for the Games.

paint/mend the boat -holiday/week

end clean/arrange the hall -debate/meeting

repair/mend the car -journey/trip

prepare/test the plane -flight/race

3

T: paint the gate

S1: The gate hasn't been painted yet.

S2: Never mind! I'll paint it for you.

mend the radio cut the grass

sweep the floor pay the milkman

wash my clothes lay the table

make the coffee serve my lunch

4

T: paint the gate

S1: You haven't painted the gate yet!

S2: Don't worry! I'll have painted it by this evening.

iron my shirts wash my clothes

type the letters pay the milkman

mend the radio cut the grass

sweep the floor do your homework

Tell the story

- 1 Games-our country -four years' time
- 2 many people -visiting-government-hotels-stadium-swimming pool
- 3 also+new roads-railway
- 4 Games-just outside-'Olympic City'
- 5 completed-roads-end of the year
- 6 By-finished work-stadium
- 7 buildings-designed-Kurt Gunter
- 8 Everyone-excited -looking forward-because-never-in this country

Topics for discussion

- 1 Talk about some of the outstanding athletic achievements of the last Olympic Games.
- 2 Which is your favourite sporting event in the Games? Why?
- 3 Where and why were the first Olympic Games held? Do the Games still have a useful purpose? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time, so the government will be putting up new buildings just outside the capital. Kurt Gunter has designed the buildings and workers will have completed the new stadium by the end of next year. The Games will be held in this country for the first time and we are looking forward to them.

Lesson 38 Everything except the weather

Comprehension questions

- 1 What's your friend called? (Harrison.)
- 2 Have you known him for long? (Yes, I have.)
- 3 Where had he lived before he returned to England?
(In the Mediterranean.)
- 4 How long had he lived there? (For many years.)
- 5 Had he often dreamed of retiring in England? (Yes, he had.)
- 6 Where had he planned to settle down? (In the country.)
- 7 What did he buy as soon as he returned? (A house.)
- 8 What time of year was it? (Summer.)
- 9 What did he begin to complain about? (The weather.)
- 10 Why didn't he like the weather?
(It rained continually and it was often bitterly cold.)
- 11 Did he get a shock? (Yes, he did.)
- 12 What had he been used to? (Sunshine.)
- 13 How did he act?
(He acted as if he had never lived in England before.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

- T: Ask me if Harrison is an old friend.
S: Is Harrison an old friend?
T: Who...?
S: Who is an old friend?
- 1 Harrison is an old friend. (Who)
 - 2 he'd lived in the Mediterranean. (Where)
 - 3 he'd lived there for many years before he returned to England.
(How long) (Where)
 - 4 he'd often dreamed of retiring to England. (What) (Who)
 - 5 he bought a house in the country (Where)
 - 6 he went to live there. (Where) (Who)
 - 7 he began to complain about the weather. (What ...about) (Why) (Who)
 - 8 it rained continually. (How often)
 - 9 Harrison got a shock. (Who) (Why)
 - 10 he sold the house. (What) (When)
 - 11 he left the country. (Why) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: refuse the prize -won

S1: Why did you refuse the prize yesterday?

S2: Because I hadn't won it!

forget your speech -prepared/learnt

lose your car -closed/locked

return the tools -asked for/ordered

wait for the milkman -paid/thanked

2

T: broken -her arm

S1: She's broken her arm again.

S2: Again? I didn't know she'd ever broken it before.

lost -her handbag/her driving licence

given up -smoking/cigarettes

won -first prize/the chess match

annoyed -the Smiths/the headmaster

3

T: hear the news at the office

S1: Did he hear the news at the office?

S2: No, he'd heard it before he went to the office.

break/hurt his arm in Spain

meet/see them at the party

discover/learn the truth at the meeting

lose/find his glasses at the theatre

4

T: won a race

S1: Have you won a race like this before?

S2: I'd never won a race at all until I won this one!

had an accident broken a glass

seen a film written a book

flown a plane driven a car

Tell the story

- 1 old friend -Mediterranean -many years -returned
- 2 dreamed of returning -settle down
- 3 no sooner -house -live there
- 4 immediately -complain -weather
- 5 summer -rained -cold
- 6 so many -sunshine -shock
- 7 acted as if -never -England
- 8 In the end -more -could bear
- 9 hardly -settle down -sold -left

Topics for discussion

- 1 Which foreign country would you like to live in? Why?
- 2 Have you ever looked forward to doing something and then been disappointed? Tell us about it.
- 3 What effect can weather have on the character of a people and their customs?

Key to Summary writing

The writer's friend, Hanrrison, had spent many years in the Mediterranean, but he wanted to retire in England so he bought a house in the country. The summer that year was very bad and he complained about the weather. In the end Harrison not only sold the house but also left the country.

Lesson 39 Am I all right?

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where was John Gilbert? (In hospital.)
- 2 Had he had an operation? (Yes, he had.)
- 3 What did he ask his doctor to tell him?
(Whether his operation had been successful.)
- 4 The doctor refused to, didn't he? (Yes, he did.)
- 5 What did the patient ask for the following day?
(For a bedside telephone.)
- 6 When did he ring the hospital exchange? (When he was alone.)
- 7 Whom did he ask to speak to? (Dr. Millington.)
- 8 What did Mr. Gilbert say? (He was inquiring about a certain patient, Mr. John Gilbert.)
- 9 Did he ask if Mr. Gilbert's operation had been successful?
(Yes, he did.)
- 10 What did the doctor tell him in reply?
(That the operation had been successful.)
- 11 What did he ask the doctor next?
(When Mr. Gilbert would be allowed to go home.)
- 12 How long would he have to stay? (For another two weeks.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if John Gilbert was in hospital.

S: Was John Gilbert in hospital?

T: Where ...?

S: Where was John Gilbert?

1 John Gilbert was in hospital. (Where)

2 he'd had an operation. (What)

3 he wanted to know whether it had been successful. (What)

4 he asked his doctor. (Who)

5 the doctor refused to tell him. (What)

6 he asked for a bedside phone. (What ...for)

7 he telephoned the hospital exchange when he was alone. (When)
(Where) (Why)

8 he asked for Dr. Millington. (Who ...for)

9 he said he was enquiring about a patient. (What) (Who ...about)

10 the patient's name was John Gilbert.

Pattern drill

1

T: sold the house

S1: I wonder if he's sold the house.

S2: I asked if he'd sold it, but no one knew.

bought the flat had lunch

phoned the doctor taken the car

posted the parcel had the operation

2

T: Has Mary met John?

S1: Did Mary say she'd met John?

S2: She didn't tell me whether she had or not.

Has John seen/been to that film?

Have the Smiths bought/sold the flat?

Have the children had lunch/eaten?

Has your secretary lost/found my letter?

3

T: they' ll come -tomorrow

S1: Will they come tomorrow?

S2: They didn't tell me when they'd come.

they'll return home/go abroad -next week

she'll arrive/leave -this evening

he'll go to hospital/start work -tomorrow

he'll retire/settle down -next year

4

T: Why didn't Tom come to the party?

S1: Our teacher asked why Tom didn't come to the party. Do you know why?

S2: I've no idea why he didn't come.

Jane come to/attend the lecture

Mary speak/pay attention during the class

John play in/watch the match

that boy answer/understand the question

Tell the story

- 1 John Gilbert -in hospital -asked -operation -successful -refused
- 2 following day -asked for -telephone
- 3 alone -exchange -Dr. Millington
- 4 asked -operation -successful -and -doctor told him
- 5 then asked -allowed -go home -told -stay in hospital -two weeks
- 6 doctor asked -relative -patient
- 7 'No'-answered -'John Gilbert'

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever visited a hospital or had an operation? Tell us about it.
- 2 Think of some other situations when, like Mr. Gilbert, you might pretend to be someone else on the telephone.
- 3 Should doctors always inform patients about their condition? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Dr. Millington refused to tell his patient, Mr. John Gilbert, whether his operation had been successful. The next day the patient telephoned Dr. Millington and inquired about a certain patient, Mr. John Gilbert. The doctor answered a number of questions about the patient and then asked whether the caller was a relative. The caller then told him who he was.

Lesson 40 Food and talk

Comprehension questions

- 1 Did you go to a dinner party last week? (Yes, I did.)
- 2 Who did your hostess ask you to sit next to? (Mrs. Rumbold.)
- 3 Was she large or small? (Large.)
- 4 She didn't smile. did she? (No, she didn't.)
- 5 What was she wearing? (A tight black dress.)
- 6 What was she looking at? (Her plate.)
- 7 What was she soon busy doing? (Eating.)
- 8 What did you try to do? (To make conversation.)
- 9 You told her a new play was coming to 'The Globe' soon, didn't you? (Yes, I did.)
- 10 Did you ask her if she'd be seeing it? (Yes, I did.)
- 11 What did she reply? ('No.')
- 12 What did you ask her next? (Whether she would be spending her holidays abroad this year.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I went to a dinner party last week.

S: Did you go to a dinner party last week?

T: When...?

S: When did you go to a dinner party?

- 1 I went to a dinner party last week. (When) (Where) (Who)
- 2 the hostess asked me to sit next to a large, unsmiling lady. (Where)
- 3 her name was Mrs. Rumbold. (What)
- 4 she was wearing a tight black dress. (What kind of) (Who)
- 5 her eyes were fixed on her plate. (What)
- 6 she was busy eating in a short time. (How, soon) (Who)
- 7 I tried to make conversation. (What)
- 8 I told her about a new play. (What)
- 9 It was coming to 'The Globe'. (Where)
- 10 it would start soon. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: asked you to go to-the play

S1: Has she asked you to go to the play?

S2: No, she hasn't. But I'd go to it if she asked me to.

told you to write/post-the letter

asked you to apologize to/thank-the boy

invited you to play for/join-her team

hired you to paint/decorate-his house

2

T: hit him, told you to

S1: Would you hit him if he told you to?

S2: Don't be silly! He'd never tell me to hit him.

read/write-his essay-paid you to

play for/join-his team-invited you to

marry/advise-him/her-asked you to

apply for/take-his job-advised you to

3

T: drive to London-busy roads

S1: Will you be driving to London today?

S2: I would drive if the roads weren't so busy.

set out/sail-from Dover-rough sea

ride/go-to the station-thick fog

set off/leave-for Rome-bad weather

climb/walk-up the mountain-heavy snow

4

T: drive-to London-busy roads

S1: I'll be driving to London soon.

S2: I wouldn't drive now if I were you. The roads are too busy.

set out/sail-from Dover-rough sea

ride/go-to the station-thick fog

set off/leave-for Rome-bad weather

climb/walk-up the mountain-heavy snow

Tell the story

- 1 Last-dinner-hostess-Mrs. Rumbold
- 2 large, unsmiling-tight black dress
- 3 not even-look up-seat beside her
- 4 eyes-on plate-busy eating
- 5 tried-make conversation
- 6 I asked about-theatre-holidays
- 7 she answered'No'-every question
- 8 despair-enjoying-dinner?
- 9 answered-'ate more-talked less-both enjoy'

Topics for discussion

- 1 What subjects do you like talking about? Why?
- 2 If you are at a party, which do you think is more important, meeting and talking to people or food? Why?
- 3 'Listening is as much part of "good conversation" as talking.' Do you agree? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer sat next to Mrs. Rumbold at the dinner party. He tried to make conversation but she was busy eating. He talked about the new play at 'The Globe' and about the holidays. She answered his questions briefly. Then he asked her if she was enjoying her dinner and she answered, Young man, if you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!

Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat?

Comprehension questions

- 1 Were you in a shop or a theatre? (A shop.)
- 2 Who were you with? (My wife.)
- 3 She was trying a hat on, wasn't she? (Yes, she was.)
- 4 What did you say to your wife? ('Do you call that a hat?')
- 5 Did she think you were being rude? (Yes, she did.)
- 6 How long had you been in the hat shop? (Half an hour.)
- 7 What was the remark you suddenly made?
('We mustn't buy things we don't need.')
- 8 How soon did you regret saying it? (Almost at once.)
- 9 What did your wife remind you of? (The terrible tie I bought yesterday.)
- 10 Do you think it's terrible or beautiful? (Beautiful.)
- 11 Can a man have too many ties? (No, he can't.)
- 12 What about a woman and her hats?
(A woman can't have too many hats either.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I was in a hat shop.

S: Were you in a hat shop?

T: Where ...?

S: Where were you?

1 I was in a hat shop. (Where)

2 I was with my wife. (Who)

3 she was trying on a hat. (What)

4 it looked terrible. (How)

5 we'd been in the shop for half an hour. (How long)

6 I sat down on a modern chair. (Where)

7 it had holes in it. (What)

8 my wife was looking at herself in the mirror. (What...doing)

9 I made a sudden remark. (What)

10 I regretted it almost at once. (How soon)

11 I said we mustn't buy things we don't need. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: some flowers

S1: Why don't you buy some flowers?

S2: I'd like to buy some, but I don't really need any.

some shoes a coat

a suit some cakes

an umbrella some cards

a dress some jam

a bicycle

2

T: phone the doctor

S1: I must phone the doctor.

S2: You needn't bother, I've already phoned him.

order the food tidy his room

cook the lunch pay the bill

make the beds make the coffee

3

T: you -wait for her

S1: Did you wait for her?

S2: I didn't have to wait for her. SHE waited for ME.

you -pay for him he-entertain her

she -call on him she -find them

they -speak to her they -phone her

4

T: Don't smoke! It's forbidden.

S1: You mustn't smoke. It's forbidden.

S2: You needn't have told me that. I know it is.

go near/use -that machine -dangerous

use/ride -that bicycle -broken

disturb/worry -the manager -busy

buy/accept -those radios -stolen

Tell the story

- 1 'call that a hat' -to my wife
- 2 'needn't -so rude' -answered
- 3 sat -modern chair -holes -waited
- 4 half an hour -wife -still -mirror
- 5 'mustn't buy -don't need' -remarked
- 6 'needn't -said that' -answered
- 7 'remind -terrible tie -yesterday'
- 8 'a man -never -too many' -I said
- 9 'a woman -many hats'-answered
- 10 out -shop -wife -hat -lighthouse

Topics for discussion

- 1 What kinds of things would you like that you don't really need?
- 2 Who do you think are generally more extravagant, men or women? Why?
- 3 What is meant by the proverb: 'Waste not, want not'? Give some examples.

Key to Summary writing

The writer's wife was trying on a hat but he did not like it. He sat down and waited for her. Then they began arguing again. He had bought a tie the day before but his wife did not like it. 'A man can never have too many ties,' he said. His wife used exactly the same argument and bought the hat. It looked like a lighthouse.

Lesson 42 Not very musical

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where had you had a long walk? (Through one of the markets of Old Delhi.)
- 2 Why did you stop at a square? (To have a rest.)
- 3 Who did you notice after a time? (A snake charmer.)
- 4 How many baskets did he have? (Two.)
- 5 What was his pipe covered with? (With coins.)
- 6 When did he pick it up? (As soon as he saw us.)
- 7 What did he open then? (One of the baskets.)
- 8 When did you have the first glimpse of the snake?
(When he began to play a tune.)
- 9 Did it rise out of the basket? (Yes, it did.)
- 10 What movements did it begin to follow? (The movements of the pipe.)
- 11 What kind of music was the snake charmer p laying to begin with?
(An Indian tune.)
- 12 Did he change to jazz tunes? (Yes, he did.)
- 13 What else did he play? (Modern pop songs.)
- 14 Were you surprised? (Yes, we were.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if we were in one of the markets of Old Delhi.

S: Were you in one of the markets of Old Delhi?

T: Where ...?

S: Where were you?

- 1 we were in one of the markets of Old Delhi. (Where)
- 2 we'd had a long walk. (What)
- 3 we stopped at a square. (Where) (Why)
- 4 we needed a rest. (What) (Why)
- 5 we noticed a snake charmer. (What) (Where)
- 6 he had two large baskets. (How many)
- 7 he was sitting at the other side of the square. (Where) (Who)
- 8 we went to have a look at him. (What ...do)
- 9 he picked up a long pipe. (What) (When)
- 10 it was covered with coins. (What ...with)
- 11 he opened one of the baskets. (What)
- 12 he began to play a tune. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: some more soup

S1: Have some more soup!

S2: No thanks. I've had enough.

some more salad some more tea

another piece of cake another bowl of soup

another sandwich another biscuit

some more coffee some more fish

2

T: sugar-in his tea

S1: I thought he took sugar in his tea.

S2: He does, usually. But he's having tea without sugar today!

lemon/milk -with his tea

milk/cream -with his coffee

ice/water -with his whisky

lemon/ice -in Coca-Cola

3

T: nice swim -out to the island

S1: Did they have a nice swim?

S2: Yes, they swam out to the island.

good sleep/rest -all afternoon

useful practice/talk -for six hours

pleasant walk/ride - round the park

good laugh/cry -all through the film

4

T: felt that material -very soft

S1: Have you felt that material? It's very soft.

S2: Is it? Let me have a feel.

tasted that milk/cream -sour

tried that door-stuck

smelt that cheese/meat -bad

looked at these photos/pictures-good

Tell the story

- 1 long walk -market -Old Delhi -stopped -square -a rest
- 2 snake charmer -baskets -other side -so -went to have a look
- 3 saw us -picked up -opened-baskets
- 4 began to play -snake rose out - began -followed movements -pipe
- 5 surprised -jazz -modern pop songs
- 6 snake -continued -slowly
- 7 couldn't tell -Indian music -jazz

Topics for discussion

- 1 Many people are afraid of snakes. Why do you think this is so?
What about you?
- 2 Have you seen other kinds of animals 'performing'? Where?
What did they do?
- 3 What kind of music do you like (a) when you want to relax, (b) when you are dancing, (c) at a concert? Give reasons for your choice.

Key to Summary writing

We watched a snake charmer in a square in Old Delhi. He had a long pipe and two large baskets. He played a tune and the snake in one of the baskets rose out of the basket and began to follow the movements of the pipe. Then the snake charmer played modern tunes but the snake continued to dance slowly. It did not know the difference between Indian music and jazz.

Lesson 43 Over the South Pole

Comprehension questions

- 1 Was R. E. Byrd American or English? (American.)
- 2 When did he fly over the North Pole? (In 1926.)
- 3 When did he fly over the South Pole? (In 1929.)
- 4 Was this the first successful flight over the South Pole? (Yes, it was.)
- 5 What were Byrd and his men able to do at first?
(To take a great many photographs.)
- 6 Did they soon run into trouble? (Yes, they did.)
- 7 What seemed certain at one point?(That their plane would crash.)
- 8 Why did it have to rise to 10,000 feet? (To get over the mountains.)
- 9 What did Byrd order his men to do?
(To throw out two heavy food sacks.)
- 10 Did this make the plane lighter? (Yes, it did.)
- 11 What was it then able to do? (To reach the South Pole.)
- 12 By how much did it clear the mountains? (Four hundred feet.)
- 13 How far away was the South Pole at this point?
(Three hundred miles.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if R. E. Byrd was an explorer.

S: Was R.E. Byrd an explorer?

T: Who ...?

S: Who was R. E. Byrd?

- 1 R. E. Byrd was an explorer. (Who)
- 2 he came from America. (Where) (Who)
- 3 he was the first man to fly over the South Pole. (Who)
- 4 he flew over it in 1929. (When) (Who)
- 5 he had flown over the North Pole three years earlier. (When) (Who)
- 6 they were able to take a great many photographs. (How many)
- 7 they took photographs of the mountains below. (What...of)
- 8 they soon ran into difficulties. (When)
- 9 they thought that their plane would crash. (What) (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: see

S1: When can you see me?

S2: I can see you tomorrow if you like.
come shopping with mend the iron for
choose a car for come for a walk with
go to the zoo with say goodbye to
have lunch with visit the church with

2

T: The baby-walk

S1: Can the baby walk yet?

S2: No, but he'll be able to walk in a few months' time.
Jane -swim/drive/use a computer
your brother -play jazz/play Chopin
John -speak German/read French
your sister -cook/make her own clothes

3

T: swim -3

S1: When did you learn to swim?

S2: I could swim by the time I was three.
ride a bicycle -8 use a keyboard -17
speak English -15 read -7
make a dress -12 drive a car -16
read music -10 sail a boat -14

4

T: see the play

S1: It's a pity he couldn't see the play.

S2: Oh, didn't you know? He was able to see it after all.
visit Mary go to the party
take the exams take you out
get some leave attend the lecture
borrow a car watch the match

Tell the story

- 1 1929 -American explorer-Byrd -South Pole -first time
- 2 at first -many photographs -mountains -soon -serious trouble
- 3 one point -certain -crash
- 4 only get over -rose -10,000 feet
- 5 ordered -throw out -food sacks
- 6 able to rise -cleared -by 400 feet
- 7 knew -reach -South Pole -300 miles -no more mountains -sight

Topics for discussion

- 1 What other famous explorers do you know about? Tell us about one of them.
- 2 When and why can aerial photographs (i.e. those taken from the air) be useful?
- 3 What are the main differences between 'modern' expeditions and those of fifty years ago or more? Do you think explorers were braver then? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The American explorer, R. E. Byrd, became the first man to fly over the South Pole in 1929. He took a lot of photographs during the flight but then he ran into difficulties. His plane could not get over the mountains so he ordered his men to throw out two heavy food sacks. The plane then flew over the mountains and continued without further trouble.

Lesson 44 Through the forest

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who ran through a forest after two men? (Mrs. Anne Sterling did.)
- 2 What didn't she think of as she ran? (Of the risk she was taking.)
- 3 Was she with her children? (Yes, she was.)
- 4 What were they doing? (Having a picnic.)
- 5 Where were they having their picnic? (At the edge of a forest.)
- 6 Had the two men rushed up to her? (Yes, they had.)
- 7 What did they try to steal? (Her handbag.)
- 8 There was a struggle, wasn't there? (Yes, there was.)
- 9 What broke in the struggle? (The strap of her handbag.)
- 10 Where did they both start running? (Through the trees.)
- 11 Did she run after the two men? (Yes, she did.)
- 12 She was soon out of breath, wasn't she? (Yes, she was.)
- 13 She caught up with them, didn't she? (Yes, she did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Mrs. Anne Sterling was having a picnic.

S: Was Mrs. Anne Sterling having a picnic?

T: Who ...?

S: Who was having a picnic?

- 1 Mrs. Anne Sterling was having a picnic. (Who) (Where)
- 2 she was with her children. (Who...with)
- 3 they were sitting at the edge of a forest. (Where) (Why) (Who)
- 4 two men rushed up to her. (How many)
- 5 they tried to steal her handbag. (What)
- 6 the strap broke in the struggle. (What)
- 7 the men ran off with the bag. (What)
- 8 they started running through the trees. (Where) (Why) (Who)
- 9 Mrs. Sterling was very angry. (Why) (Who)
- 10 she ran after them. (What...do)
- 11 she was soon out of breath. (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: live abroad -live here

S1: Why don't you live abroad instead of living here?

S2: I prefer living here to living abroad.

eat out -cook lunch drive to work -walk

sit down -stand up travel by boat -fly

teach -write books stay at home -go out

watch TV -read work -sleep all day

2

T: play tennis -rest

S1: Shall we play tennis, or would you prefer to rest?

S2: I'd prefer to rest, if you don't mind.

eat now -eat later keep the car -sell it

get a taxi -walk watch TV -read

go to see him -phone eat at home -go out

go home -wait here drive -go by bus

3

T: study

S1: I started to study, but then a friend called.

S2: That's no excuse for not studying!

cook lunch/make a cake/wash the dishes

mend the chair/hang the picture/work

write to him/phone her/help them

do my homework/cut the grass/have lunch

4

T: Mend his trousers!

S1: His trousers need mending.

S2: I don't care if they do. I hate mending.

iron your clothes clean the windows

type that letter water those plants

wash his shirt polish that table

tidy your room plan your trip

Tell the story

- 1 Mrs. Anne Sterling didn't think -risk -when -ran through -two men
- 2 They'd -while she -picnic at the -with her children -tried -handbag
- 3 struggle -strap -both -through trees
- 4 so angry that -ran after
- 5 When -caught up -saw -going through -contents -ran straight at
- 6 such a fright -dropped -ran away
- 7 strap needed -but -hadn't stolen

Topics for discussion

- 1 What, do you think, were the contents of Mrs. Sterling's handbag?
What sort of things do you usually carry around in your handbag/pocket?
Why?
- 2 Do you like going on picnics? What sort of places do you choose? Why?
- 3 In what kinds of situations do ordinary people suddenly behave in an extraordinary way?

Key to Summary writing

Two men tried to steal Mrs. Sterling's handbag. She was having a picnic at the edge of a forest with her children at the time. They took the bag after a struggle and ran through the trees. She ran after them and caught up with them. The men had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag. Mrs. Sterling ran straight at them so they ran away.

Lesson 45 A clear conscience

Comprehension questions

- 1 What had been lost? (A large sum of money.)
- 2 Who soon learnt the news? (The whole village.)
- 3 What was Sam Benton's job? (He was a butcher.)
- 4 What had he lost? (His wallet.)
- 5 When had he lost it? (When he went to the post office.)
- 6 He was sure the wallet must have been found, wasn't he? (Yes, he was.)
- 7 Who could have found it? (One of the villagers.)
- 8 Was the wallet soon returned to him? (No, it wasn't.)
- 9 When did he find it? (One morning three months later.)
- 10 Where was it? (Outside his front door.)
- 11 What had it been wrapped in? (Newspaper.)
- 12 How much money did it contain? (Half the money he had lost.)
- 13 What else was inside it? (A note.)
- 14 What did the note say? ('A thief, yes, but only 50 per cent a thief.')
- 15 What happened two months later? (Some more money was returned.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if the whole village soon learnt the news.

S: Did the whole village soon learn the news?

T: How quickly ...?

S: How quickly did the village learn the news?

1 the whole village soon learnt the news. (How quickly) (What) (Who)

2 a large sum of money had been lost. (What)

3 Sam Benton had lost his wallet. (What)

4 Sam was the local butcher. (What) (Who)

5 he was taking his savings to the post office (Where) (What) (Who)

6 the wallet was returned three months later. (When) (What)

7 Sam found the wallet outside his front door. (What) (Where) (Who)

8 it had been wrapped up in newspaper. (What ...in)

9 there was a note in it. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: car -left in a car park

S1: Was the car ever found?

S2: Yes, it had been left in a car park.

pen/glasses -picked up by mistake

papers/case -sent to the wrong address

luggage/parcels -labelled incorrectly

dogs/child -taken to the police station

2

T: No one has returned the wallet.

S1: The wallet hasn't been returned yet.

S2: No, but we expect it to be returned any day now.

found the car answered my letter

caught the thief published his book

paid the bill arranged the meeting

repaired the clock explained the plan

3

T: pay the rent

S1: I've been told to pay the rent.

S2: But it's already been paid. It must have been paid by someone else.

post the letters put away the tools

deliver the parcel put up the notice

return the books repair the gate

feed the cat buy the tickets

4

T: pay the bill

S1: The bill hasn't been paid.

S2: I thought it had been paid by your secretary. I'm sorry.

post the letters put away the books

deliver the parcel put up the notice

return the keys make the coffee

lock the desk book the seats

Tell the story

- 1 village soon learnt -Sam Benton -lost -while taking -post office
- 2 Sam -sure -must have -by one of -but -not returned
- 3 Three months -his wallet -front door
- 4 warped -newspaper -contained half -with a note -‘50% thief’
- 5 later -more money -another note
- 6 In time -all -paid back -this way
- 7 last note - ‘100% honest’

Topics for discussion

- 1 What would you do if you lost the equivalent of £ 1,000? Would you expect to get it back? Why/Why not?
- 2 Do you think anyone is ‘100% honest’? Give examples to illustrate your answer.
- 3 ‘Honesty is the best policy.’ Is this always true? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The local butcher, Sam Benton, was taking his savings to the post office but he lost his wallet. Three months later, Sam not only received half his money but a note as well. The note said: ‘A thief, yes, but only 50 per cent a thief!’ The thief included a note every time he sent Sam more money. The last note said: ‘I am 100 per cent honest now!’

Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where was the plane from? (London.)
- 2 Which airport did it arrive at? (Sydney airport.)
- 3 What did workers begin to unload? (Some wooden boxes.)
- 4 What did they contain? (Clothing.)
- 5 One of the boxes was extremely heavy, wasn't it? (Yes, it was.)
- 6 Could anyone account for this fact? (No, they couldn't.)
- 7 What suddenly occurred to a worker? (To open up the box.)
- 8 What was he astonished to find? (A man.)
- 9 Where was the man lying? (On top of a pile of woollen goods.)
- 10 Why didn't he try to run away?
(He was so surprised at being discovered.)
- 11 Was he arrested? (Yes, he was.)
- 12 When did he hide in the box? (Before the plane left London.)
- 13 Had he had a comfortable trip? (No, he hadn't.)
- 14 Why had it been an uncomfortable one?
(He had been confined to the wooden box for over 18 hours.)
- 15 How much was he ordered to pay? (£ 3,500.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the plane arrived at Sydney airport.

S: Did the plane arrive at Sydney airport?

T: Which airport ...?

S: Which airport did the plane arrive at?

1 the plane arrived at Sydney airport. (Which airport) (What)

2 it had come from London. (Where)

3 workers began to unload some wooden boxes. (What) (When) (Who)

4 they contained clothing. (What)

5 one box was extremely heavy. (How heavy)

6 one of the workers had an idea. (Who)

7 the worker opened the box. (What) (Why)

- 8 he was astonished at what he found. (Why)
9 a man was lying in the box. (Who)
10 he was on top of a pile of woollen goods. (Where)
11 he stayed there. (What ...do)

Pattern drill

1

T: amused at -your expression
S1: Why were they so amused?
S2: They were amused at your expression.
annoyed at -my suggestion/her mistake
astonished at -your reply/my refusal
surprised at -her reaction/the result
shocked at -his rudeness/her behaviour

2

T: charged for the repairs
S1: Will he be charged for the repairs?
S2: He's already been charged for them.
punished/forgiven -for his mistake
asked/searched -for the stolen money
blamed/excused -for his bad behaviour
mistaken/exchanged -for the spy

3

T: interfere with their work
S1: Don't interfere with their work.
S2: Don't worry. I've no intention of interfering with it.
quarrel with him mix with those people
compete with her part with that coat
play with fire correspond with them
argue with them disagree with the boss

Tell the story

- 1 plane from London -Sydney airport
- 2 began to unload -boxes -contained
- 3 one box -heavy -occurred to -open up
- 4 found a man -on top -woollen goods
- 5 surprised -didn't even try -run away
- 6 arrested -admitted -before - London
- 7 long and uncomfortable -confined -box -over 18 hours
- 8 ordered - £ 3,500 -cost
- 9 normal price -trip - £ 2,000

Topics for discussion

- 1 If you found a stranger hiding somewhere in your house, what would you do?
- 2 If you wanted a free trip on a plane or a boat, how would you try to get one?
- 3 Employees of many air and rail companies get free or reduced fares for themselves and their families. Is this a good thing? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The plane from London arrived at Sydney airport and workers unloaded a number of wooden boxes from it. They contained clothing. One of the boxes was extremely heavy so a worker opened it up. He found a man lying on top of a pile of woollen goods. The man was arrested. He had travelled in the box from London. He had to pay £ 3,500. An ordinary ticket costs £ 2,000.

Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost

Comprehension questions

- 1 What is up for sale? (A public house is.)
- 2 Who is the present owner? (Mr. Ian Thompson is.)
- 3 Has he owned it for long? (No, he hasn't.)
- 4 Why is he going to sell it? (It is haunted.)
- 5 Why couldn't he go to sleep one night? (He heard a strange noise.)
- 6 Where was it coming from? (From the bar.)
- 7 When did he find the doors blocked? (The next morning.)
- 8 What had been moved? (The furniture had.)
- 9 When had Mr. Thompson turned the lights off? (Before he went to bed the night before.)
- 10 Were they on or off in the morning? (They were on.)
- 11 How many empty whisky bottles did he find? (Five.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if a public house is up for sale.

S: Is a public house up for sale?

T: What ...?

S: What is up for sale?

1 a public house is up for sale. (What)

2 it was recently bought by Mr. Ian Thompson.

(How long ago) (Who ...by)

3 he's going to sell it because it's haunted. (Why)

4 he heard a strange noise one night. (What)

5 it was coming from the bar. (Where)

6 he stayed awake all night. (How long)

7 he went to the bar the next morning. (When) (Where)

8 the doors had been blocked by chairs. (What) (What ...by)

9 the furniture had been moved. (What)

10 the lights were on. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: seen that film

S1: He's just seen that film again.

S2: If he sees it once more, he'll have seen it ten times!

read that notice counted the votes

painted the gate given that lecture

made that speech written to the boss

seen the ghost heard that programme

2

T: she -go abroad

S1: Is she going to go abroad?

S2: She would if she could, but she can't afford to.

he -go round the world/buy a pub

they -send a telegram/get a Rolls-Royce

you -visit Old Delhi/learn to fly

she -give a party/stay at a hotel

3

T: play with the children

S1: Did you play with the children?

S2: They didn't come, so I didn't have to play with them after all.

pay the milkman help the old lady

feed the beggar speak to the manager

advise the boy listen to the doctor

threaten the man confess to the police

4

T: show him a picture

S1: I've shown him a picture.

S2: You needn't have done that! I'd already shown him one.

give him a stamp look at a flat

buy her a dress book a seat

tell them a story call a taxi

send them a letter light a fire

Tell the story

- 1 public house -recently -by Mr. Ian Thompson -up for sale
- 2 going to sell -haunted
- 3 told me -couldn't go to sleep -noise -from the bar
- 4 morning -doors blocked -furniture
- 5 lights off before -bed -on -morning
- 6 five empty -ghost must have -night
- 7 I suggested -villagers -shook head
- 8 won't accept -even -gives it to him

Topics for discussion

- 1 If you wanted to buy a house, what kinds of things would (a) persuade you to buy it and (b) make you decide not to buy it?
- 2 Do you believe in ghosts? Why/Why not?
- 3 Have you ever had a strange experience you could not explain? Tell us about it.

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Ian Thompson bought a public house recently but it is haunted so he is going to sell it. There was a strange noise in the bar one night and the room was in disorder next morning. Mr. Thompson also found five empty whisky bottles. He does not believe that any villagers broke into the bar and had a drink. Nobody in the village wants to buy the inn.

Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something?

Comprehension questions

- 1 When do dentists always ask questions?
(When it's impossible for us to answer.)
- 2 Have you just had a tooth out? (Yes, I have.)
- 3 Who pulled it out for you? (My dentist did.)
- 4 What did he tell you to do afterwards? (To rest for a while.)
- 5 Did you try to say something? (Yes, I did.)
- 6 You couldn't, could you? (No, I couldn't.)
- 7 Why couldn't you? (My mouth was full of cotton wool.)
- 8 What did the dentist know about you? (That collected match boxes.)
- 9 What did he ask you about your collection?
(Whether my collection was growing.)
- 10 Did he ask you about your brother? (Yes, he did.)
- 11 What else did he ask you? (Whether I liked my job in London.)
- 12 What was your tongue busy doing?
(Searching out the hole where the tooth had been.)
- 13 How did you feel suddenly? (Very worried.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T : Ask me if dentists always ask questions when you can't answer.

S: Do dentists always ask questions when you can't answer?

T: When ...?

S: When do dentists always ask questions?

- 1 dentists always ask questions when you can't answer. (When) (Who)
- 2 my dentist does this. (Who) (What)
- 3 he'd just pulled out a tooth. (What)
- 4 I had to rest for a while. (How long)
- 5 I tried to speak. (What ...do)
- 6 my mouth was full of cotton wool. (What)
- 7 I collect match boxes. (What)
- 8 the dentist asked me about my collection. (What ...about) (Who)
- 9 he wanted to know about my new job. (What ...about) (Who)
- 10 I answered him with nods and strange noises. (How) (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: she speaks English -student

S1: She speaks English very well, doesn't she?

S2: Yes, there aren't many students who speak English as well as she does.

he -plays tennis/chess/football -boy

she -types/works/takes shorthand -secretary

he -jumps/runs/swims/dives/sings -pupil

2

T: ill, do any work

S1: He says he's too ill to do any work.

S2: Then he must be very ill!

tired/weak/lazy -make an effort

proud/upset/angry -apologize

busy/worried/anxious -help us

stupid/uneasy/nervous -pass the exam

3

T: mend his shirt -badly torn

S1: Did she mend his shirt?

S2: No, it was so badly torn (that) she couldn't mend it.

lift the box/move the cases -heavy

drink the coffee/finish her soup -hot

mend the stereo/sell her CDs -old

finish the book/read the poem -boring

4

T: naughty boy/boys

S1: What a naughty boy/What naughty boys!

S2: Yes, I've never met such a naughty boy/such naughty boys before.

pretty girl/-s clever child

amusing boy/-s nice person/people

kind dentist/-s good-looking man/men

generous host/-s hard-working student/-s

Tell the story

- 1 Dentists -ask -impossible -to answer
- 2 My dentist -pulled out -told me -rest
- 3 tried to say -mouth full -cotton wool
- 4 asked -collection of -eggs -growing
- 5 then -my brother -new job -London
- 6 In answer-nodded -strange noises
- 7 tongue -searching -tooth had been
- 8 suddenly -worried -couldn't say
- 9 When -dentist at last -from my mouth -able to tell -wrong tooth

Topics for discussion

- 1 How often do you go to the dentist's? Do you go regularly?
Why/Why not?
- 2 What reason(s) might a dentist have for talking to his patients while treating them?
- 3 People in some countries have much better teeth than those in others.
Can you suggest any reasons for this?

Key to Summary writing

The dentist in the story had pulled out one of the writer's teeth and (had) told him to rest for a while. He asked several questions but the writer could not answer them. His mouth was full of cotton wool. He suddenly discovered something wrong but he could not say anything. The dentist eventually removed the cotton wool from his mouth and the writer told him that he had pulled out the wrong tooth.

Lesson 49 The end of a dream

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who saved up for years? (A young man in Teheran did.)
- 2 What did he save up to buy? (A real bed.)
- 3 Why did he want one? (He was tired of sleeping on the floor.)
- 4 Did his bed have springs and a mattress? (Yes, it did.)
- 5 Where did he take his bed? (On to the roof of his house.)
- 6 Why did he take it there? (Because the weather was very hot.)
- 7 How did he sleep at first? (Very well.)
- 8 What happened on the third night? (A storm blew up.)
- 9 What swept the bed off the roof? (A gust of wind did.)
- 10 Where did it land? (In the courtyard below.)
- 11 When did the young man wake up? (After the bed had struck the ground.)
- 12 Was he hurt? (No, he wasn't.)
- 13 What about the bed? (It was smashed to pieces.)
- 14 Was the young man still on the mattress, or on the ground?
(On the mattress.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the young man lived in Teheran.

S: Did the young man live in Teheran?

T: Where...?

S: Where did the young man live?

- 1 the young man lived in Teheran. (Where)
- 2 he was tired of sleeping on the floor. (What)(Who)
- 3 he saved up for years. (How long)(Why)
- 4 he wanted to buy a real bed. (What)(why)
- 5 he bought a bed with springs and a mattress. (What kind)(Why)
- 6 the weather was very hot.(What...like)
- 7 he carried his bed on to the roof. (Where...to)
- 8 he slept very well. (How)(Who)
- 9 a storm blew up on the third night. (When)
- 10 a gust of wind swept the bed off the roof. (What)(When)
- 11 it landed in the courtyard. (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: read-a dull book-fall asleep

S1: Were you reading a dull book last night?

S2: Yes, I was. I fell asleep reading it.

finish/write-the report-work late

wait for/speak to-them-get very angry worry

about/think about-Mary-stay awake

look at/look for-the photos-spend ages

2

T: bought-a new pen-saved up for weeks

S1: I see you've bought a new pen.

S2: Yes, I saved up for weeks to buy it.

passed-the exam/exams-worked hard

got-a new coat/car-borrowed some money

found-the book/boxes-searched all day

had-a bath/swim-got up early

3

T: miss the train-run

S1: Why did he miss the train? He ran, didn't he?

S2: Yes, but he missed it, even though he ran.

lose his job/position-work hard

fail the exam/test-study hard

return/refuse our present-like it

damage/crash the car-drive slowly

4

T: tired-fell asleep

S1: She was tired, wasn't she?

S2: She was so tired(that)she fell asleep.

angry/upset-left immediately

surprised/astonished-couldn't move

lonely/unhappy-became very ill

frightened/nervous-burst into tears

Tell the story

- 1 Tired-on the floor-saved-real bed
- 2 proud owner-bed-springs-mattress
- 3 very hot-carried the bed-roof
- 4 slept-two nights-third-storm
- 5 gust-swept the bed off-courtyard
- 6 didn't wake-bed-struck the ground
- 7 bed-smashed to pieces-man-unhurt
- 8 woke up-still on the mattress
- 9 Glancing-sadly picked up-carried it
- 10 put it-floor-promptly-sleep again

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe a storm that you've known or heard about. What kind of damage was done?
- 2 Describe the most uncomfortable night you've ever spent.
- 3 How does the climate affect the kind of houses and furniture people have? Give as many examples as you can to illustrate your answer.

Key to Summary writing

A young man in Teheran bought a real bed for the first time in his life. He slept on the roof of his house because the weather was hot. Three nights later, the bed was swept off the roof during a storm. The man was not only unhurt but still on his mattress. As the bed was in pieces, he carried his mattress indoors and after he had put it on the floor he went back to sleep.

Lesson 50 Taken for a ride

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where do you love travelling? (In the country.)
- 2 When did you go on an excursion? (Recently.)
- 3 How long did your trip take you? (Longer than I expected.)
- 4 Where were you going? (To Woodford Green.)
- 5 How did you travel? (By bus.)
- 6 You didn't know where to get off, did you? (No, I didn't.)
- 7 Did the conductor offer to tell you? (Yes, he did.)
- 8 In what part of the bus did you sit? (In the front.)
- 9 Why did you sit there? (To get a good view.)
- 10 When did the bus stop? (After some time.)
- 11 Did you look round? (Yes, I did.)
- 12 Why were you shocked? (Because I realized that I was the only passenger left on the bus.)
- 13 What had the conductor forgotten?
(To put me off at Woodford Green.)
- 14 Were you angry with him? (No, I wasn't.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if I love travelling in the country.

S: Do you love travelling in the country?

T: What...?

S: What do you love doing?

1 I love travelling in the country.(What)

2 I went on an excursion recently.(When)

3 I went by bus.(How)(Where)

4 my trip took longer than I expected.(How long)(What)(Why)

5 I wanted to get off at Woodford Green.(Where)(Why) (Who)

6 I told the conductor where I was going.(Who)(What)

7 he said he'd tell me where to get off.(What)(Why)

8 I sat in the front of the bus. (Where)

9 I got a good view of the countryside.(What...of) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: look-kick the dog

S1: Look at him! He's kicking the dog.

S2: I refuse to look at anyone who kicks dogs.

listen-shout at/interrupt the speaker

look-steal/eat a bird's egg

look-fight with/hit a little boy

listen-sing/play a pop song

2

T: buy a Ford-not a Fiat

S1: Why are you buying a Ford? Why don't you buy a Fiat?

S2: I prefer Fords.

drink/make tea-not coffee

go out with/help John-not Henry

study/learn Latin-not English

read/write a novel-not a play

3

T: buy that hat

S1: Why on earth is she buying that hat?

S2: I expect she likes it.

wear that dress teach Mary

feed the lions drink whisky

exercise his dogs study English

help that man play football

4

T: arrive

S1: Hasn't she arrived yet?

S2: No, but I'm expecting her to arrive any minute now.

finish get back

pay them cook the lunch

leave come in

phone you book the seats

return go out

make the tea come to see you

Tell the story

- 1 love-in the country-don't like losing
- 2 excursion recently-Woodford Green
- 3 by bus-didn't know where
- 4 Conductor promised-tell-get off
- 5 sat-front of the bus-view so-stayed on the bus
- 6 bus stopped-shock-only passenger
- 7 'get off here'-said-'as far as...'
- 8 forgotten-put me off
- 9 I decided-get off-but-conductor told me-

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever lost your way? Tell us about it.
- 2 Do you like travelling in the country? Why/Why not?
- 3 What are the advantages/disadvantages of travelling by public transport?

Key to Summary writing

The writer wanted to go to Woodford Green but as he did not know the way, the conductor promised to tell him where to get off. When they arrived at the bus terminus, the writer asked if they were at Woodford Green. The conductor then realized that he had forgotten to put him off. The writer stayed on the bus because it was going back.

Lesson 51 Reward for virtue

Comprehension questions

- 1 What's your friend called? (Hugh.)
- 2 What did he recently decide to do? (To go on a diet.)
- 3 When did he begin his diet? (A week ago.)
- 4 What did he do first of all?
(He wrote out a long list of all the foods that were forbidden.)
- 5 Which foods were on the list? (Most of the things Hugh loves.)
- 6 What are the foods Herbert loves?
(Butter, potatoes, rice, beer, milk, chocolate, and sweets.)
- 7 When did you visit him? (Yesterday.)
- 8 Were you surprised? (No, I wasn't.)
- 9 He hadn't got any thinner, had he? (No, he hadn't.)
- 10 Where did he lead you? (Into his room.)
- 11 What did he do then? (He hid a large parcel under his desk.)
- 12 How did he look? (Embarrassed.)
- 13 What did you ask him? (What he was doing.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if my friend is called Hugh.

S: Is your friend called Hugh?

T: What...?

S: What is your friend called?

- 1 my friend is called Hugh.(What)
- 2 he's always been fat.(How long)(Who)
- 3 he decided to go on a diet.(Who) (Why)
- 4 he began his diet a week ago.(When)
- 5 he wrote out a list.(What)(When)
- 6 it included all the food he loves.(What)
- 7 I paid him a visit yesterday.(When)
- 8 I rang the bell.(What...do)
- 9 Hugh was as fat as ever.(Who)
- 10 he led me into his room. (Where)
- 11 he hid a large parcel under his desk. (Where) (What)(Who)
- 12 he was very embarrassed. (Who) (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: paint the gate-mend

S1: Did you paint the gate last week?

S2: Yes, I mended it first and then I painted it.

give a lecture-write/prepare

eat those vegetables-wash/cook

sell that machine-repair/test

use your bicycle-clean/oil

2

T: go on a diet-beg

S1: He went on a diet once, didn't he?

S2: Yes, he did. His wife begged him to.

cook dinner/clean the car-ask

wear a hat/borrow some money-want

iron a shirt/wash his socks-tell

change his job/see a doctor-advise

3

T: find the body-return home

S1: When did she find the body?

S2: She found it when she returned home.

discover the gun/knife-enter the room

run to the phone/door-see the man

hear a noise/movement-walk forward

drop the phone/gun-fall to the floor

4

T: give a party this month

S1: Are they going to give a party this month?

S2: I don't expect so. They gave one last month.

buy a new house/flat/car this year

have a haircut/bath/day off work this week

enter for a race/competition this month

see a film/play/football match this month

Tell the story

- 1 friend Hugh-fat-so bad-2 First-list-foods-forbidden
- 3 included most-things Hugh loves: ...
- 4 Yesterday-visit-fat as ever
- 5 led me-room-hid-large parcel recently-decided-go on a diet
- 6 obvious-very embarrassed
- 7 I asked-smiled guiltily-parcel-desk
- 8 explained-diet so strict-reward
- 9 showed-contents-chocolate-sweets

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever tried to give up something you like? Why? How successful were you?
- 2 Fat people are often very kind, cheerful and contented. Can you suggest why such people might tend to be fat rather than thin?
- 3 What kind of bad habits are most difficult to break? Why?

Key to Summary writing

Hugh is so fat that he has gone on a diet. He has forbidden himself all the foods he likes but he has not lost weight. When the writer visited him yesterday, he hid a large parcel under his desk. The parcel contained chocolates and sweets. Hugh said that he had to reward himself occasionally because his diet was so strict.

Lesson 52 A pretty carpet

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where have you just moved to?(To a new house.)
- 2 How long have you been working? (All morning.)
- 3 What have you been trying to do?(To get my new room in order.)
- 4 Has this been difficult?(Yes, it has.)
- 5 Why hasn't it been easy?(Because I own over a thousand books.)
- 6 Is the room big or small?(Small.)
- 7 Where have you put your books?(On the floor.)
- 8 Are they all over the floor?(Yes, they are.)
- 9 What do you have to do if you want to get in or out of the room?
(To walk on the books.)
- 10 What did your sister help you to do?
(To carry one of my old bookcases up the stairs.)
- 11 Why was she surprised when she went into your room?
(She saw all the books on the floor.)
- 12 What did she say about the books?
(‘This is the prettiest carpet I have ever seen.’)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if we've just moved into a new house.

S: Have you just moved into a new house?

T: Where...to?

S: Where have you just moved to?

- 1 we've just moved into a new house. (Where...to)
- 2 I've been working hard all morning. (How long)(Why) (Who)
- 3 I've been trying to get my new room in order. (What)
- 4 this has been difficult. (Why)(What)
- 5 I own over a thousand books. (How many)
- 6 the room is rather small. (How big)
- 7 I've put the books on the floor. (Where)
- 8 I have to walk on them to get in or out of the room.
(Why) (When) (What)
- 9 my sister helped me a short time ago. (When) (Who)
- 10 she got a big surprise. (Who) (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: upset-say goodbye to a friend

S1: You look upset. What've you been doing?

S2: I've been saying goodbye to a friend.

dirty-clean the garage/mend my bike

wet-walk in the rain/water the garden

tired-work late/drive all night

angry-fight/argue with John

2

T: book-read-all day

S1: Have you finished that book already!

S2: Well, I've been reading it all day!

speech-prepare-all evening/for hours

book-study-all term/for 3 months

work-do-all morning/since 9 o'clock

fruit-eat-all evening/since tea time

3

T: take their exams

S1: Have they been taking their exams?

S2: Yes, they have. They've taken five of them so far.

make the beds play their CDs

type the letters attend the lectures

open their presents visit the museums

correct the essays sell their pictures

4

T: ring John up

S1: Why hasn't she rung John up yet?

S2: What do you mean? She's been ringing him up all morning.

do the housework speak to Mary

pack her clothes cook lunch

practise the piano do the washing

read the paper clean the office

Tell the story

- 1 We-just moved-new house-and I -working hard-trying-room in order
- 2 not easy-I own-over a thousand
- 3 room-rather small-books-the floor
- 4 cover every-floor-walk-in or out
- 5 while ago-sister-bookcase-stairs
- 6 surprised to see-books-on the floor
- 7'prettiest carpet-ever seen-said
- 8 gazed-added- 'don't need bookcases-sit-spare time-read the carpet'

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you enjoy moving house/changing the furniture in your room?
Why/Why not?
- 2 What s orts of books do you like reading? Give reasons for your choice(s).
- 3 some people prefer watching television to reading books. Can television take the place of books? why/ Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer has been trying to get his new room in order all morning. This has proved difficult because he owns over a thousand books which cover every inch of floor space at the moment. His sister helped him to carry one of his old bookcases up the stairs a short while ago. She got a surprise when she s aw the room, but she thought that the books made a pretty carpet.

Lesson 53 Hot snake

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where was there a big forest fire? (In California.)
- 2 Have firemen put it out? (Yes, they have.)
- 3 What have they been trying to find out since then?
(How the fire began.)
- 4 What are forest fires often caused by? (Broken glass or cigarette ends.)
- 5 People are careless, aren't they? (Yes, they are.)
- 6 When did the firemen examine the ground? (Yesterday.)
- 7 Did they find any broken glass? (No, they didn't.)
- 8 Did they think a cigarette end started the fire? (No, they didn't.)
- 9 They were quite sure it didn't, weren't they? (Yes, they were.)
- 10 When was the cause discovered? (This morning.)
- 11 Who discovered it? (A fireman did.)
- 12 Was it what he was looking for? (No, it wasn't.)
- 13 What did he notice? (The remains of a snake which was wound round the electric wires of a 16, 000-volt power line.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if there's been a big forest fire in California.

S: Has there been a big forest fire in California?

T: Where...?

S: Where has been a big forest fire?

1 there's been a big forest fire in California. (Where)

2 firemen have put it out. (What) (Who)

3 they've been trying to discover the cause. (What)(Who)

4 fires are often caused by broken glass. (What ... by)
(How)(What)

5 they're also caused by cigarette ends. (What else)

6 the firemen examined the ground yesterday.
(When) (What) (Who)

7 they looked for broken glass. (What)

8 a fireman discovered the cause accidentally.(How) (What) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: a shoemaker

S1: How long have you been a shoemaker?

S2: I've been making shoes for a long time.

a stamp collector a painter

a horse trainer a nurse

a boat builder a farmer

a tax collector an art teacher

2

T: teach-a year

S1: He didn't teach there for long, did he?

S2: No, he taught there for a year and then he left.

work-a few months stay-two days

wait-half an hour sit-five minutes

park-ten minutes lecture-a month

live-three months stop-an hour or so

3

T: dictionary

S1: Could you lend me your dictionary?

S2: I'm sorry, I lent it to Tom last week and he hasn't returned it yet.

ladder garden tools

suitcase hammer

brown gloves scissors

guitar French books

bicycle car

tennis balls black boots

Tell the story

- 1 firemen-put out-fire in California
- 2 since then-find out-fire began
- 3 forest fires-glass-cigarette ends
- 4 examined-couldn't find-broken glass
- 5 quite sure-cigarette end-not start
- 6 This morning-accidentally-the cause
- 7 remains snake wires power line
- 8 explanation-simple-unusual
- 9 bird-snatched up-dropped on to
- 10 When-wound-sent sparks-started

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe a fire you've seen or heard about.
- 2 What are the most common causes of fires in towns/houses?
How can ordinary people help to prevent them?
- 3 In what ways can modern technology endanger wild life?

Key to Summary writing

Now that firemen have put out a big forest fire in California, they have been trying to discover its cause. There was no evidence that it was started by broken glass or a cigarette end. However a fireman has just solved the mystery. He noticed the remains of a snake which had been dropped by a bird on to some electric wires. In winding itself round the wires, the snake had sent sparks to the ground and this caused the fire.

Lesson 54 Sticky fingers

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where did you send the children? (To school.)
- 2 Had you all had breakfast? (Yes, we had.)
- 3 Where did you go then? (To the shops.)
- 4 Were your children back from school when you returned home?
(No, they weren't.)
- 5 Where was your husband? (At work.)
- 6 The house was quiet, wasn't it? (Yes, it was.)
- 7 What did you decide to do? (To make some meat pies.)
- 8 What were you soon busy doing? (Mixing butter and flour.)
- 9 When did the phone ring? (When my hands were covered with sticky pastry.)
- 10 Were your fingers clean or sticky? (Sticky.)
- 11 Who was on the phone? (Helen Bates.)
- 12 Were you pleased to hear her voice? (No, I wasn't.)
- 13 How long did it take you to persuade her to ring back? (10 minutes.)
- 14 Why was there a mess? (There was pastry on my fingers, on the telephone, and on the doorknobs.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I sent the children to school after breakfast.

S: Did you send the children to school after breakfast?

T: When...?

S: When did you send the children to school?

1 I sent the children to school after breakfast.(When)(Where)

2 I went to the shops. (Where)(When)

3 it was still early when I returned home. (What time)

4 my children were at school. (Who)(Where)

5 my husband was at work. (Where)(Who)

6 I decided to make some meat pies. (What)

7 I mixed some butter and flour. (What)

8 my hands were soon covered with sticky pastry. (What ...with)

9 the telephone rang just then. (When)

10 I felt extremely annoyed. (How)

11 it was Helen Bates. (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: any more news of John

S1: Have you any more news of John?

S2: No, I've given you all the news there is.

any more work/mending to give me

any more information about the accident

any more proof/evidence of his guilt

any more washing/ironing to be done

2

T: apples

S1: These are the only apples I have. Do you want some of them?

S2: Yes, please. Any apples will do.

clothes meat pies string glue

bags cigarettes boxes glasses

paper paint wire material

3

T: at school-for a short time

S1: Has he ever been to school?

S2: Yes, he was at school for a short time.

in hospital-last year/for his operation

in prison-a year ago/for robbery

in town-yesterday/for the meeting

at sea-with the navy/as a boy

4

T: the cattle market

S1: I'm going to the cattle market.

S2: Oh, can I come with you? I've never been to a cattle market before.

the cinema the hospital

the police station the tax office

the theatre the lawcourt

the car factory the airport

Tell the story

- 1 breakfast-children-school-the shops
- 2 early-returned-and the house-quiet
- 3 decided-meat pies
- 4 short time-busy-my hands-sticky
- 5 that moment-telephone rang
- 6 dismayed-recognized-Helen Bates
- 7 ten minutes-persuade-ring-later
- 8 pastry-fingers-telephone-knobs
- 9 no sooner-back-kitchen-doorbell
- 10 postman-me to sign-registered letter

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe how you would bake a cake/make one of your favourite dishes.
- 2 Do you enjoy visiting the shops? Describe a typical shopping day.
- 3 It is possible that in future we shall be able to see, as well as hear, people when we use the telephone. Do you think this is a good idea? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

As soon as the writer returned home from the shops she began to make some meat pies. When the telephone rang soon afterwards, her fingers were very sticky. She spent ten minutes talking to Helen Bates on the telephone. After that she looked at the mess she had made. Her fingers, the telephone and the doorknobs were covered with pastry. Just then the postman rang the doorbell. He wanted her to sign for a registered letter.

Lesson 55 Not a gold mine

Comprehension questions

- 1 What almost came true recently? (Dreams of finding lost treasure.)
- 2 Is 'The Revealer' a new machine? (Yes, it is.)
- 3 What's it been used to do? (To detect gold.)
- 4 Was the machine used in a cave? (Yes, it was.)
- 5 Where was the cave? (Near the seashore.)
- 6 Who are said to have buried gold there? (Pirates.)
- 7 What did they often fail to do? (To collect the gold they buried in the cave.)
- 8 Where did the search party go? (Into the cave.)
- 9 What did they have with them? ('The Revealer.')
- 10 What did they hope to find? (Buried treasure.)
- 11 Who was examining the soil near the entrance to the cave?
(The leader was.)
- 12 What did the machine show? (That there was gold under the ground.)
- 13 How did the party feel? (Very excited.)
- 14 They dug a hole, didn't they? (Yes, they did.)
- 15 How deep was it? (Two feet deep.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if a new machine has been invented.

S: Has a new machine been invented?

T: What...?

S: What has been invented?

- 1 a new machine has been invented. (What)
- 2 it's called 'The Revealer'. (What)
- 3 it has been used to detect gold. (What...for)
- 4 it was used in a cave recently. (When) (Where) (Why)
- 5 the cave was near the seashore (Where)
- 6 pirates used to hide gold there. (Who)
- 7 they'd often fail to collect it. (What)
- 8 the search party went into the cave. (Where) (Who) (Why)
- 9 they were armed with the new machine. (What...with)
- 10 it showed that there was gold. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: eat sweets-dentist

S1: I used to eat a lot of sweets.

S2: So did I until my dentist told me not to.

drink whisky/eat bread-doctor

buy clothes/spend money-father

read comics/miss lessons-teacher

recite/write poetry-friends

2

T: drive so much-lorry driver

S1: It isn't good for him to drive so much!

S2: Don't worry, he's used to driving. He's a lorry driver.

run so hard-athlete/footballer

argue so much-policeman/lawyer

stay up so late-journalist/writer

travel so much-sales rep/businessman

3

T: have a dog-take it for walks

S1: They used to have a dog.

S2: Yes, and they were always taking it for walks!

own a car-polish it/have it serviced

be in politics-make speeches/go abroad

have a gun-shoot birds/frighten people

play football-score goals/get hurt

4

T: child-explore caves

S1: What sort of things did she like doing as a child?

S2: She'd explore caves whenever she could.

girl-climb trees/miss lessons

student-miss lectures/go dancing

teenager-buy pop records/go to parties

tourist-visit museums/talk to people

Tell the story

- 1 Dreams-lost treasure-almost true
- 2 new-‘Revealer’-invented-to detect gold-buried-ground
- 3 used-cave-near the seashore-pirates-to hide gold
- 4 pirates-bury-fail to collect
- 5 with-machine-party-hoping to find
- 6 leader-soil-machine showed-gold
- 7 excited-dug-found-coin-worthless
- 8 In spite-many-may reveal-of value

Topics for discussion

- 1 What kind of ‘treasure’ would you like to discover?
Where would you look for it?
- 2 For what different purposes can ‘detector’ machines be used today?
- 3 If someone finds an object of historical value, do you think the object should remain the property of the finder or belong to the nation? Why?

Key to Summary writing

‘The Revealer’ is a new machine which is used for detecting buried gold. Using this machine, a search party recently tried to find gold in a cave near the seashore. Although they examined the cave thoroughly they only found a small gold coin which was practically worthless. However many people believe that the machine may reveal something of value soon.

Lesson 56 Faster than sound!

Comprehension questions

- 1 What kind of race is held once a year? (A race for old cars.)
- 2 It was held last year, wasn't it? (Yes, it was.)
- 3 How many cars entered for it? (A lot of cars.)
- 4 Which was one of the most handsome? (A Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost.)
- 5 Which was the most unusual? (A Benz with three wheels.)
- 6 When was it built? (In 1885:)
- 7 Was there another car as old as the Benz? (No, there wasn't.)
- 8 Was there a lot of excitement before the race? (Yes, there was.)
- 9 Was there just one loud explosion? (No, there wasn't.)
- 10 What happened to many of the cars on the course? (They broke down.)
- 11 Where did some drivers spend a lot of their time? (Under their cars.)
- 12 How many cars completed the race? (A few cars did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if the car race for old cars is held once a year.

S: Is the race for old cars held once a year?

T: How often...?

S: How often is the race for old cars held?

1 the race for old cars is held once a year. (How often)

2 a lot of cars entered for it last year. (How many)(When)

3 one of the most handsome cars was a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost.
(Which)

4 the most unusual car was a Benz. (Which)

5 it had only three wheels. (How many)

6 it was built in 1885. (When) (What)

7 the race began with a great many loud explosions. (How) (Why)

8 many of the cars broke down on the course. (How many) (Where)

9 a few completed the race. (How many)

Pattern drill

1

T: tall

S1: Are you as tall as John?

S2: I don't think so. I think John's a little taller than me.

clever unlucky

efficient hard-working

intelligent strong

capable dark

talkative active

good-looking generous

2

T: tall brother-height

S1: My brother is much taller than yours.

S2: He isn't! They're about the same height.

old house/young mother /old dog-age

heavy parcel/light case-weight

large shoes/small hands/big case-size

long ruler/short pencil-length

3

T: Scotch-Irish whisky

S1: Is Scotch whisky very different from Irish whisky?

S2: A Scot could tell you better than I can!

French-Italian wine/food /music

American-British English/customs

German-Japanese stereos/cars

Portuguese-Spanish art/literature

4

T: take jam/eggs

S1: What a lot of jam/eggs Tom's taken!

S2: Yes, he's taken much/many more than he did yesterday.

drink beer eat food

do work buy sweets

paint pictures write letters

break glasses pick flowers

Tell the story

- 1 Once a year-race-old cars
- 2 a lot-last year-excitement-began
- 3 most handsome-Silver Ghost
- 4 Benz-unusual -also oldest-1885
- 5 After-explosions-race began
- 6 Many-broke down-some drivers-more time-under-than in them
- 7 winning car-40 m. p. h-much faster
- 8 sped downhill -trouble -stop it
- 9 race -different -no less exciting

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you think old (i. e. veteran) cars should be used or kept in museums? Why?
- 2 Would you prefer to own something (a) very old or (b) very modern? Why?
- 3 Imagine it is the year 2100. In what way do you think things like cars, airplanes, buildings, etc. will differ from those of today?

Key to Summary writing

A lot of old cars entered for the race, which is held once a year. A great many loud explosions could be heard when they set off and though many cars broke down during the race, a few managed to complete the course. The winning car went downhill so quickly that its driver had a lot of difficulty trying to stop it.

Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam?

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who stood at the window of an expensive shop? (A woman did.)
- 2 Did she hesitate before going in? (Yes, she did.)
- 3 What did she ask the assistant? (To see a dress in the window.)
- 4 What didn't the assistant like? (The way she was dressed.)
- 5 How did he glance at her? (Scornfully.)
- 6 What did he tell her? (That the dress was sold.)
- 7 Was the woman angry or pleased? (Angry.)
- 8 She walked out of the shop, didn't she? (Yes, she did.)
- 9 What did she decide to do the next day? (To punish the assistant.)
- 10 When did she return to the shop? (The following morning.)
- 11 How was she dressed? (In a fur coat.)
- 12 Whom did she seek out? (The rude assistant.)
- 13 What did she ask him for? (The same dress.)
- 14 Did he realize who she was? (No, he didn't.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if a woman stood at a shop window.

S: Did a woman stand at a shop window?

T: Who...?

S: Who stood at a shop window?

- 1 a woman stood at a shop window. (Who)
- 2 she was wearing jeans. (What)
- 3 it was an expensive shop. (What kind of)
- 4 she was looking at a dress. (What)
- 5 she hesitated for a moment. (How long)
- 6 she finally went into the shop. (Where)
- 7 she asked to see the dress. (What)
- 8 the assistant glanced at her scornfully. (How) (Why) (Who)
- 9 he told her the dress was sold. (What)
- 10 the woman walked out of the shop angrily. (Why) (Who)
- 11 she returned to the shop the next day. (When) (Why)(Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: station-under the clock

S1: Shall we meet at the station?

S2: Yes. I'll wait for you under the clock.

cinema-near the entrance/ticket office

school-in the playground/hall/office

hotel-in the lobby/lounge/bar

car park-by the car/ticket machine

2

T: Jane looks young-bikini

S1: Jane looks very young in that bikini, doesn't she?

S2: She looks young in anything!

Mary looks nice/smart/elegant-coat

Betty looks pretty/beautiful-long dress

John looks handsome/important-uniform

Tom looks funny/silly/stupid-little hat

3

T: man-a beard

S1: The police say the man they're looking for has a beard.

S2: There's a man with a beard over there!

man-a black briefcase/a bald head

child-a brown dog/red hair

woman-a red handbag/a broken leg

dog-a long tail/two black spots on it

4

T: coat

S1: It's hot. Why doesn't he take off his coat?

S2: He says he wants to keep it on.

hat raincoat jacket uniform

tie pullover gloves sweater

boots shirt scarf overalls

Tell the story

- 1 woman-jeans-expensive shop
- 2 hesitated-went in-dress-window
- 3 assistant-didn't like-way-dressed
- 4 scornfully-told her-dress-sold
- 5 angrily-decided-punish-next day
- 6 returned-the following morning
- 7 seeking-rude-asked-same dress
- 8 Not realizing-eager to-this time
- 9 difficulty-got the dress but-said
- 10 enjoyed-making-bring-before buying

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe an annoying experience you've had while being served in a shop.
- 2 Do you sympathize with the woman in the story? Why/Why not?
- 3 What are the advantages/disadvantages of shopping in (a) large stores and (b) small shops?

Key to Summary writing

Though the woman in jeans hesitated for a moment, she entered an expensive shop and asked to see a dress that was in the window. On being told by an assistant that the dress was sold, the woman returned the following morning dressed in a fur coat. The assistant was eager to serve her this time. After making him bring her almost everything in the window, the woman finally bought the dress she had first asked for.

Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise?

Comprehension questions

- 1 Is Frinley a large or tiny village? (Tiny.)
- 2 What is it said to possess? (A 'cursed tree'.)
- 3 Why has the number of visitors to Frinley increased?
(Because the tree was mentioned in a newspaper.)
- 4 Where was the tree planted? (Near the church.)
- 5 How long ago was it planted? (Fifty years ago.)
- 6 Has it had an evil reputation for long? (No, it hasn't.)
- 7 If anyone touches the tree, he'll have bad luck, won't he? (Yes, he will.)
- 8 What will happen if he picks a leaf? (He will die.)
- 9 What do many villagers believe? (That the tree has already claimed a number of victims.)
- 10 What's the vicar been asked to do? (To have the tree cut down.)
- 11 Has he agreed to do so? (No, he hasn't.)
- 12 Why is the tree useful? (Because tourists have been coming from all parts of the country to see it.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the village of Frinley is tiny.

S: Is the village of Frinley tiny?

T: How big...?

S: How big is the village of Frinley?

1 the village of Frinley is tiny. (How big)

2 it's said to possess a 'cursed tree'. (What)

3 it was mentioned in a newspaper. (Where)

4 there have been more visitors to Frinley since then. (Since when) (Why)

5 they come to see the tree. (What)(Why)

6 it was planted fifty years ago. (When)

7 it's near the church. (Where) (What)

8 it's gained an evil reputation. (What)

9 the villagers say it's unlucky. (What)

10 anyone who touches the tree will have bad luck.

(What will happen to) (Who)

11 the vicar's been asked to have it cut down. (What) (Why)(Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: ticket sent two free tickets

S1: Did you get the ticket you were promised?

S2: Yes, I was sent two free tickets.

money-paid/offered/given- £ 10

books-lent/sold-three good books

job-offered/given-a job in the bank

holiday-offered/given-two weeks off

2

T: read-the report-sent

S1: Did he read the report?

S2: It was sent to him, but he didn't read it.

get/receive-the letter-posted

accept/take-the reward-offered

buy/like-the flat-shown

use/like-the car-given

3

T: clever boy

S1: They say that boy's clever.

S2: He's not as clever as he's said to be.

good book old church

dangerous bull exciting film

brilliant play beautiful actress

interesting city valuable painting

4

T: an earthquake-1 00 people killed

S1: There's been an earthquake.

S2: I know. At least a hundred people are said to have been killed.

an accident-10 people hurt/injured

a robbery-4 men arrested/caught

a fight-6 soldiers wounded/shot

a competition-3 prizes won/awarded

Tell the story

- 1 village of Frinley-possess-cursed
- 2 tree-newspaper-visitors-increased
- 3 planted church fifty years ago recent years-evil reputation
- 4 touches-bad luck; if-leaf-die
- 5 many-already claimed-victims
- 6 vicar-asked-cut down-refused
- 7 useful-income-tourists-all parts
- 8 in spite-tourists-picking-cutting-and so far, not one-sudden death

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you know of a place/thing (real or in fiction) said to be 'cursed'? Tell us about it.
- 2 Imagine you are (a) a villager and (b) the vicar in the story. Give your reasons for (a) wishing and (b) refusing to have the tree cut down.
- 3 Tell us about some common superstitions in this country.

Key to Summary Writing

The number of visitors to the village of Frinley has increased because there is said to be a 'cursed tree' near the church. Since the villagers believe that if anyone picks a leaf he will die, they have asked the vicar to have the tree cut down. As the tree is a useful source of income, the vicar has refused to have the tree cut down. Meanwhile, though tourists have been picking leaves, not one of them has come to harm.

Lesson 59 In or out?

Comprehension questions

- 1 What's your dog called? (Rex.)
- 2 Where did he use to sit? (Outside our front gate.)
- 3 What did he use to do there? (Bark.)
- 4 Why did he bark? (He wanted to come into the garden.)
- 5 When did he stop barking? (When someone opened the gate.)
- 6 Who complained of the noise? (The neighbours did.)
- 7 What did your husband train him to do? (To press his paw on the latch to let himself in.)
- 8 How long did he spend training him? (Weeks.)
- 9 What did Rex soon become expert at? (At opening the gate.)
- 10 Where were you going last week? (Shopping.)
- 11 Where was Rex? (In the garden near the gate.)
- 12 Why was he barking this time? (Because he wanted someone to let him out.)
- 13 What's he developed since then? (Another bad habit.)
- 14 What does he do as soon as he opens the gate from the outside? (He comes into the garden and waits until the gate shuts.)
- 15 What does he do then? (Then he sits and barks until someone lets him out.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if our dog is called Rex.

S: Is your dog called Rex?

T: What...?

S: What is your dog called?

1 our dog is called Rex. (What)

2 he used to sit outside our front gate. (Where) (Why)

3 he used to bark. (What) (Why)

4 he'd bark until someone opened the gate. (How long)

5 the neighbours complained. (Who)

6 my husband spent weeks training Rex. (How long) (Who)

7 I noticed him near the gate. (Where)

8 he was barking so that someone would let him out. (What...doing) (Why)

9 he's developed another bad habit. (What else) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: read the paper

S1: He's reading the paper, isn't he?

S2: Yes, he always reads the paper at this time of the day.

go to work speak to his secretary

dictate letters attend a meeting

read his mail phone New York

go to the bank have lunch

2

T: play the piano

S1: She's playing the piano, isn't she?

S2: Yes, she's been playing the piano all morning.

read her library book/a detective story write her
report/the invitations

work in the library/on her new book

do a crossword/an experiment

3

T: make films

S1: I was told that films were made here.

S2: They used to be made here, but they aren't any more.

grow tomatoes bottle milk

sell tickets train horses

build ships mine coal

serve meals repair radios

4

T: stopped by the police

S1: You've taken your time! What on earth have you been doing?

S2: I'm sorry. We got stopped by the police.

delayed by fog/on the way

involved in an accident/in an argument

caught in a storm/in a traffic jam

lost on the way/in the town

Tell the story

- 1 dog, Rex -front gate -bark
- 2 Every time he wanted -until someone
- 3 neighbours complained-my husband -training him -latch
-let himself in
- 4 last week -noticed -near the gate
- 5 This time -barking -let him out
- 6 Since then -another bad habit
- 7 opens -the outside -until -gate shuts
- 8 sits and barks -let him out
- 9 removed -gate -annoyed -haven't seen

Topics for discussion

- 1 Which animals make good/bad pets? Why?
- 2 In what ways can animals be trained to be useful to men?
- 3 Many people enjoy watching animals do tricks in circuses and seeing animals in cages in zoos. Others say both are wrong. What is your opinion?

Key to Summary writing

Our dog, Rex, used to sit outside the front gate and bark so that someone would open it. Ever since my husband trained him to open the gate himself, Rex has developed another bad habit. He barks when he is in the garden so that someone will let him out. After this he lets himself in and barks until someone opens the gate again. Now that my husband has removed the gate, Rex has disappeared.

Lesson 60 The future

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where were you? (At a village fair.)
- 2 What did you decide to do there? (To visit a fortune-teller called Madam Bell in sky.)
- 3 Where did you go? (Into her tent.)
- 4 What did she tell you to do? (To sit down.)
- 5 You gave her some money, didn't you? (Yes, I did.)
- 6 What did she do then? (She looked into a crystal ball.)
- 7 Who did she say was coming to see you? (A relation of mine.)
- 8 When would she be arriving? (This evening.)
- 9 How long did she intend to stay? (A few days.)
- 10 She said you'd get a big surprise, didn't she? (Yes, she did.)
- 11 When would you get a surprise? (When I left her tent.)
- 12 Would someone rush towards you? (Yes, they would.)
- 13 Would it be a man or a woman? (A woman.)
- 14 What were you told she'd do? (She'd speak to me.)
- 15 Where would she lead you? (Away from this place.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if I went to a village fair.

S: Did you go to a village fair?

T: Where...?

S: Where did you go?

1 I went to a village fair. (Where)

2 I visited a fortune-teller. (Who)

3 she was called Madam Bell in sky. (What)

4 I went into her tent. (Where)

5 she told me to sit down. (What) (Who)

6 I gave her some money. (What) (When)

7 she looked into a crystal ball. (What)

8 she told me my fortune. (What)

9 a relation of mine was coming to see me. (Who) (When)

10 she would be arriving that evening. (When)

11 she intended to stay for a few days. (How long) (Where) (Who)

12 I'd get a big surprise. (Who) (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: dinner -visiting Mary

S1: Can you come to dinner tonight?

S2: I'm sorry. I'm visiting Mary this evening.

the theatre -working late/teaching

the lecture -watching TV/dining out

the cinema -staying at home/lecturing

supper -meeting a friend/going out

2

T: return

S1: He's returning soon, isn't he?

S2: Yes, he's returning in two days' time.

play in a concert meet the vicar

appear on TV go to the dentist's

catch a plane run in a race

make a speech bring the car back

3

T: clean his room

S1: He's coming home this evening. Have you cleaned his room?

S2: I'll clean it before he comes.

make his bed prepare a meal

iron his trousers make a fire

wash his shirt let his family know

find his slippers tell his girlfriend

4

T: tired on arriving -look after her

S1: She'll be tired when she arrives.

S2: I'll look after her if she's tired.

angry on seeing the mess -calm her down

sad on learning the news -comfort her

hungry on returning -give her a meal

nervous on meeting you -be kind to her

Tell the story

- 1 village fair -visit a fortune-teller
- 2 into her tent -told -sit down
- 3 after -money -looked -crystal ball
- 4 relation -coming to see me
- 5 arriving ---evening -for a few days
- 6 the moment -tent -woman -towards
- 7 speak -then -lead -away from
- 8 outside -my wife hurried towards
- 9 told me my sister -station -meet her
- 10 walked away -I followed -out of

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever had your fortune told? Describe the experience.
- 2 When and why do people have fairs in your part of the country? Describe one you have been to recently.
- 3 Do you believe that some people can really foretell the future? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer visited a fortune-teller at a village fair who told him that a relation was coming to see him. She added that a woman he knew well would speak to him when he left the tent and he would follow her out of the fair. This came true because his wife spoke to him when he went outside. She told him they had to meet his sister at the station and she led him out of the fair.

Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble

Comprehension questions

- 1 When was the Hubble telescope launched into space?
(On April 20, 1990.)
- 2 Who launched the telescope? (NASA did.)
- 3 What was the cost? (Over a billion dollars.)
- 4 When did the trouble begin? (Right from the start.)
- 5 What was the trouble?
(The pictures it sent us were very disappointing.)
- 6 Why were the pictures disappointing?
(Because the telescope's main mirror was faulty.)
- 7 What is NASA planning to do?
(It will be sending four astronauts to repair it.)
- 8 How will the astronauts get to the telescope?
(The shuttle, Endeavour, will take them there.)
- 9 How will the shuttle grab the telescope?
(A robot-arm from the shuttle will grab the telescope.)
- 10 Where is the telescope? (Above the earth's atmosphere.)
- 11 What kinds of pictures shall we get soon?
(The clearest ones that we have ever seen.)
- 12 What will the pictures show us?
(The stars and distant galaxies.)
- 13 What will the Hubble tell us?
(A great deal about the age and size of the universe.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the Hubble telescope was launched into space.

S: Was the Hubble telescope launched into space?

T: What...?

S: What was launched into space?

1 the Hubble telescope was launched into space. (What)

2 the cost was over a billion dollars. (How much)

3 there was trouble right from the start. (When)

4 the pictures were very disappointing. (Why)

5 NASA will put the telescope right. (How)

6 four astronauts will be sent up to repair it. (How many)

- 7 Endeavour will take them into space. (What)
- 8 a robot-arm will grab the telescope. (What)
- 9 the Hubble is above the earth's atmosphere. (Where)
- 10 the Hubble will tell us about the age and size of the universe. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: making boats -a year

S1: Have you been making boats for long?

S2: By the time I've completed this one, I'll have been making them for a year.

designing/building bridges -ten years

writing/illustrating books -six years

directing/making films -two years

producing/writing plays -five years

2

T: make hats -thirteen

S1: How many hats have you made now?

S2: When I've made this one, I'll have made thirteen altogether.

do exercises -twenty

build bridges -five

write novels -eight

review books -twelve

3

T: arrive -get lunch

S1: John'll be arriving soon.

S2: Let me know when he arrives. Then I'll get lunch.

return -get dressed/change my clothes

get up -cook breakfast/make the beds

leave -come and see you/tidy his room

come back -borrow his car/pay him

4

T: post my letter -write

S1: When shall I post my letter?

S2: You can post it as soon as you've written it!

eat the cakes -make/ cook

publish these reports -write/finish

sell my bicycle -mend/ clean

cook the fish -wash/prepare

Tell the story

- 1 The Hubble -launched -NASA
- 2 a cost -billion dollars
- 3 Right -trouble -Hubble
- 4 pictures -disappointing -mirror -faulty
- 5 NASA - put -right
- 6 astronauts -send up -repair
- 7 Endeavour -take -Hubble
- 8 robot-arm -grab -hold -repairs
- 9 Hubble -above -atmosphere
- 10 send -pictures -stars -galaxies
- 11 Hubble -tell -age -size -universe

Topics for discussion

- 1 How much do you know about the universe?
- 2 Do you enjoy following the news about space exploration?
- 3 Are there any areas of modern science that interest you more?
If so, what are they, and why?

Key to Summary writing

When the Hubble telescope was launched into space in April 1990, the pictures it sent us were very disappointing because the main mirror was faulty. Four astronauts will soon be making the necessary repairs, and eventually, pictures from the Hubble will tell us a great deal about the age and size of the universe.

Lesson 62 After the fire

Comprehension questions

- 1 What kind of fire was it? (A forest fire.)
- 2 Did firemen get it under control? (Yes, they did.)
- 3 How long had they been fighting it? (For three weeks.)
- 4 What had covered the countryside a short time before? (Great trees had.)
- 5 How did the hills look now? (Desolate.)
- 6 What still rose from it? (Smoke.)
- 7 Was winter coming on, or was it spring? (Winter was coming on.)
- 8 Were the surrounding villages threatened with destruction?
(Yes, they were.)
- 9 Would heavy rain wash away the soil? (Yes, it would.)
- 10 What else would happen? (There would be serious floods.)
- 11 Did the forest authorities order several tons of grass-seed? (Yes, they did.)
- 12 What was special about it? (It would grow quickly.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if there was a forest fire recently.

S: Was there a forest fire recently?

T: When...?

S: When was there a forest fire?

- 1 there was a forest fire recently. (When)
- 2 firemen fought it for nearly three weeks. (How long) (What) (Who)
- 3 there had been great trees for miles around. (Where) (What)
- 4 they'd covered the countryside. (What)
- 5 the hills were now desolate. (What)
- 6 smoke still rose up from the warm ground. (What)
- 7 winter was coming on. (What)
- 8 the villages surrounding the hills were threatened. (Which) (Why)
- 9 heavy rain would wash away the soil from the hills. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: this afternoon -working

S1: What was Tom's excuse for being late this afternoon?

S2: He said he'd been working.

last night -reading/making phone calls

for lunch -teaching/marking exam papers

this evening -writing/watching T. V.

for the meeting -painting/playing chess

2

T: anxious -thinking about the exams

S1: Mary looked very anxious this morning.

S2: I know. She'd been thinking about the exams.

worried -worrying/thinking about her son

tired -working/writing all night

angry -arguing/quarrelling with John

dirty -cleaning out/painting the shop

3

T: finish the job

S1: Did the men finish the job this morning?

S2: Yes, they'd already finished it when I arrived.

repair the pipes fill the tank

spray the trees put the fire out

hang the pictures move the furniture

plant the seeds receive my message

4

T: collect stamps

S1: Did you collect stamps before you got married?

S2: Oh yes! I'd been collecting stamps for years before I met my wife.

play golf sail yachts

go camping go skiing

race horses read poetry

Tell the story

- 1 Firemen -forest fire -three weeks before -under control
- 2 before -trees covered -for miles
- 3 Winter -hills threatened -rain -wash away soil -floods as well
- 4 at last -put out -forest authorities -several tons -grass-seed -quickly
- 5 sprayed -huge quantities -aeroplanes
- 6 planting -a month -began to rain
- 7 By then -grass -taken root

Topics for discussion

- 1 Why are trees so important to (a) industry, (b) the countryside, (c) animals and people?
- 2 Describe some of the ways in which land can be protected against flooding.
- 3 Aeroplanes are now widely used for spraying insecticides, etc. What are the advantages and disadvantages of this?

Key to Summary writing

It took the firemen nearly three weeks to get the forest fire under control. Now that all the great trees had been burnt, here was danger that heavy rain would cause serious floods which would destroy the surrounding villages. To prevent this, the forest authorities ordered grass-seed which was sprayed over the ground by planes for nearly a month. By the time that it began to rain, the grass had taken root in many places.

Lesson 63 She was not amused

Comprehension questions

- 1 Has Jeremy Hampden many friends? (Yes, he has.)
- 2 Where is he very popular? (At parties.)
- 3 What does everyone admire him for? (His great sense of humour.)
- 4 What about his daughter, Jenny? (She doesn't.)
- 5 Who asked Jeremy to make a speech? (One of his closest friends.)
- 6 Where did he ask him to make it? (At a wedding reception.)
- 7 How did he prepare the speech? (Carefully.)
- 8 Who went with him to the wedding? (Jenny did.)
- 9 What had he included in his speech? (A large number of funny stories.)
- 10 What did Jenny tell him as soon as he had finished?
(That she wanted to go home.)
- 11 Was he disappointed to leave so soon? (Yes, he was.)
- 12 What did he ask Jenny on the way home? (If she had enjoyed the speech.)
- 13 Had she enjoyed the speech? (No, she hadn't.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Jeremy Hampden has a large circle of friends.

S: Does Jeremy Hampden have a large circle of friends?

T: Who...?

S: Who has a large circle of friends?

- 1 Jeremy Hampden has a large circle of friends. (Who) (How many)
- 2 he's very popular at parties. (Where)
- 3 everyone admires him for his sense of humour. (Why)
- 4 his daughter is called Jenny. (What)
- 5 she's six years old. (How old)
- 6 one of Jeremy's friends asked him to make a speech recently.
(When) (Who)
- 7 his friend wanted him to speak at a wedding reception. (Where)
- 8 Jeremy loves this sort of thing. (What)
- 9 he prepared the speech carefully. (How)
- 10 he took Jenny to the wedding. (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: Be quiet!

S1: The teacher's telling you to be quiet.

S2: He's telling YOU to be quiet, too!

Take out/Hand in your exercise books!

Write out/Do the exercise on page ninety!

Look at/Copy down the words on the board!

Open/Close/Put away your books!

2

T: Please lend me a book.

S1: She asked me to lend her a book.

S2: I advise you not to lend her ANYthing!

buy me a present fetch me a knife

tell me a joke lend me a camera

bring me a glass send me a card

sell me some tickets give me a lift

3

T: Why don't they pay her?

S1: He suggested that they should pay her.

S2: I hope they won't pay her!

sell the flat produce that play

call a strike change the plans

cut the tree down go to the moon

punish him make a speech

4

T: You must stay!

S1: He's still insisting that we should stay.

S2: Oh dear! His wife's just warned me NOT to stay!

help him take a taxi

sign the contract call the police

join them leave now

refuse the money pay the bill

Tell the story

- 1 Jeremy Hampden -friends - popular
- 2 Everybody admires -humour -except
- 3 Recently - asked - speech - wedding
- 4 prepared -carefully - went -Jenny
- 5 included - stories - great success
- 6 As soon as - Jenny told -go home
- 7 Jeremy - disappointed - did as -asked
- 8 way home - asked Jenny if - enjoyed
- 9 To his surprise - hadn't
- 10 why - didn't like -people laughing

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you know any funny stories? Tell us one.
 - 2 Describe a wedding you have been to.
 - 3 What kind of speeches do you find boring/interesting?
- Have you ever felt 'embarrassed' for the speaker? Why?

Key to Summary writing

When Jeremy Hampden, who is greatly admired for his great sense of humour, was invited to make a speech at a wedding reception, he immediately agreed to do so. Since the speech contained a lot of funny stories, it was a great success. When his six-year-old daughter, Jenny, wanted to go home after his speech, Jeremy was disappointed. She had not enjoyed it because she did not like to see so many people laughing at him.

Lesson 64 The Channel Tunnel

Comprehension questions

- 1 When did Aimé Thomé de Gamond arrive in England? (In 1858.)
- 2 Was he an engineer or an astronaut? (He was an engineer.)
- 3 What nationality was he? (French.)
- 4 What did he have a plan for?
(For a 21-mile tunnel under the English Channel.)
- 5 What did he say it would be possible to build in the centre of the Channel? (A platform.)
- 6 What would this platform serve as? (A port and a railway station.)
- 7 How would the tunnel be ventilated?
(Tall chimneys would be built above sea level.)
- 8 Who put forward a better plan? (William Lowe did.)
- 9 He wasn't French, was he? (No, he wasn't.)
- 10 What did he suggest should be built? (A double railway-tunnel.)
- 11 What problem would this solve? (The problem of ventilation.)
- 12 What would happen if a train entered this tunnel?
(It would draw in fresh air behind it.)
- 13 When was a tunnel actually begun? (In 1902.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Aimé Thomé de Gamond was French.

S: Was Aimé Thomé de Gamond French?

T: What nationality...?

S: What nationality was Aimé Thomé de Gamond?

1 Aimé Thomé de Gamond was French. (What nationality)

2 he was an engineer. (What) (Who)

3 he came to England in 1858. (When)

4 he had a plan for a tunnel. (What...for)

5 it would be twenty-one miles long. (How long)

6 it would cross the English Channel. (What)

7 a platform could be built in the centre of the Channel. (Where) (What)

8 the platform would serve as a port. (What)

9 it would also serve as a railway station. (What else)

10 ventilation would be a problem. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: meet John-like

S1: What a pity they couldn't meet John!

S2: Yes, I'm sure they'd have liked him very much if they had met him.

see the play/ go to the concert-enjoy

visit the museum/ watch the match-enjoy

hear his lecture/ see his paintings-like

try her cooking/ meet my aunt-like

2

T: made a mistake-listened to me

S1: She's made a mistake.

S2: She wouldn't have made a mistake if she'd listened to me.

broken her arm/ leg-been more careful

lost her watch/ handbag-mended the strap

failed the exam/ test-worked harder

lost her job/ reputation-taken my advice

3

T: work hard-pass the exam

S1: He had to work hard to pass the exam.

S2: Yes, he wouldn't have passed it if he hadn't worked so hard.

drive carefully/ well-avoid an accident

look hard/ carefully-find the money

run fast/ hard-catch the thief

fight hard/ well-win the title

4

T: speak to John-find

S1: Why didn't you speak to John yesterday?

S2: I'd have spoken to him if I could've found him!

enjoy the lecture-understand/ hear

arrest the thief-catch/ stop

read the book-keep/ borrow/ buy

search the house-enter/ get into

Tell the story

- 1 1858-French-21-mile tunnel-Channel
- 2 possible-build a platform-centre
- 3 serve as-port-railway station
- 4 ventilated-chimneys-above sea level
- 5 1860-Lowe-suggested-double railway
- 6 ventilation-train-draw in-air
- 7 42 years later-tunnel-begun
- 8 British-feared invasion-completed
- 9 wait-100-tunnel
- 10 opened-March 7, 1994-connecting

Topics for discussion

- 1 What are the advantages/ disadvantages of living in a country surrounded by the sea?
- 2 Would you like to travel twenty-one miles through a tunnel under the sea? Why/ Why not?
- 3 What, in your opinion, are the advantages to Britain and continental Europe of the Channel Tunnel?

Key to Summary writing

The tunnel, which the French engineer, Aimé Thomé , planned to build under the English Channel in 1858, would be ventilated by tall chimneys built above sea level. An Englishman, William Lowe, suggested a better plan two years later. Passing trains would solve the problem of ventilation in his proposed double railway tunnel because they would draw in fresh air behind them. Though work began forty-two years later, it was stopped because the British feared invasion. However, the tunnel was officially opened on March 7, 1994.

Lesson 65 Jumbo versus the police

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who is Jimmy Gates? (A circus owner.)
- 2 What did he decide to do last Christmas? (To take some presents to a children's hospital.)
- 3 Who did he dress up as? (As Father Christmas.)
- 4 Who was in his 'guard of honour'? (Six pretty girls.)
- 5 Did he set off down the main street of the city or a side street? (The main street.)
- 6 What was he riding? (A baby elephant.)
- 7 He was called Jumbo, wasn't he? (Yes, he was.)
- 8 What should Jimmy have known? (That the police would never allow this sort of thing.)
- 9 Who approached him? (A policeman did.)
- 10 Which way did he say Jimmy ought to have gone? (Along a side street.)
- 11 Why should he have done this? (Because Jumbo was holding up the traffic.)
- 12 Did Jimmy agree to go? (Yes, he did.)
- 13 What about Jumbo? (He refused to move.)
- 14 How many policemen had to push him? (Fifteen.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if Jimmy Gates is a circus owner.

S: Is Jimmy Gates a circus owner?

T: Who...

S: Who is Jimmy Gates?

1 Jimmy Gates is a circus owner. (Who)

2 he decided to take some presents to a children's hospital last Christmas. (When)

3 he dressed up as Father Christmas. (What)

4 he was accompanied by six pretty girls. (How many) (Who...by)

5 they were his 'guard of honour'. (What)

- 6 he set off down the main street of the city. (Which way)
7 he was riding a baby elephant. (What)
8 the elephant was called Jumbo. (What)
9 a policeman approached them. (Who)
10 he told Jimmy that Jumbo was holding up the traffic. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: write that letter

S1: Do you have to write that letter now?

S2: I ought to write it, but I'm not going to!

prepare your speech wash the dishes

light the fire see the manager

do your homework pick the apples

burn the rubbish phone the doctor

2

T: apologize

S1: Do you think he should apologize?

S2: It doesn't matter WHO apologizes, but SOME one's got to!

stay here open the door

pay them stop the traffic

make a speech feed the horses

finish the job call the police

3

T: take a taxi

S1: Why didn't you take a taxi last night?

S2: I know I should have taken one, but I didn't think of it
at the time.

wear a hat order some wine

call on the Smiths buy a paper

book some seats take an umbrella

ring the police take some medicine

4

T: arrive

S1: He ought to have arrived by now.

S2: He had to change his plans, but he should be arriving soon.

return phone us

buy the goods send us the money

get home reach the airport

tell us the result apply for the job

Tell the story

1 Christmas-Jimmy Gates-some presents-children's hospital

2 Father Christmas- 'guard of honour' -main street-riding-called Jumbo

3 should have known-police-never allow

4 policeman-told him-ought to-side street-holding up-traffic

5 Jimmy agreed-Jumbo refused

6 15 policemen-push-off the main

7 Afterwards-should arrest-let him off

Topics for discussion

1 When have you seen a procession in the streets? Describe it.

2 Have you ever been to a circus? Which act did you enjoy most? Why?

3 Are there any traffic problems where you live? Can you suggest any way to solve them?

Key to Summary writing

After having decided to take some presents to a children's hospital, the circus owner, Jimmy Gates, dressed up as Father Christmas and set off down the main street of the city riding an elephant called Jumbo. On being told that he was holding up the traffic, Jimmy agreed to go at once but Jumbo refused to move, so fifteen policemen had to push him off the main street. As he had a good record, however, Jumbo was not arrested.

Lesson 66 Sweet as honey!

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where did a Lancaster bomber crash? (On Wallis Island.)
- 2 Where is Wallis Island? (In the South Pacific.)
- 3 When did it happen? (In 1963.)
- 4 Was the plane badly damaged? (No, it wasn't.)
- 5 When was the plane rediscovered? (In 1989.)
- 6 Why was it worth rescuing? (Because a Lancaster bomber was rare by this time.)
- 7 Who had the plane packaged? (The French authorities did.)
- 8 What are the enthusiasts going to do with the plane? (Have it restored.)
- 9 What type of engine does the plane have? (Rolls-Royce Merlin engines.)
- 10 How many of the engines do they have to rebuild? (Three)
- 11 What was the condition of the fourth engine? (Perfect.)
- 12 Who had preserved the last engine? (A colony of bees.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T : Ask me if in 1963 a Lancaster bomber crashed on Wallis Island.

S: Did a Lancaster bomber crash on Wallis Island in 1963.

T: When...?

S: When did a Lancaster bomber crash on Walks Island?

1 in 1963 a Lancaster bomber crashed on Wallis Island. (When)
(What) (Where)

2 the island is a long way west of Samoa. (Where)

3 the plane wasn't too badly damaged. (Why)

4 the wreck remained undisturbed. (Why)

5 it was rediscovered in 1989. (When)

6 the French authorities had the plane packaged and moved to France.
(Who) (What)

7 enthusiasts are going to have it restored. (Who) (What)

8 they need to rebuild three of the four engines. (How many)

9 the fourth engine was still in perfect condition. (How) (What...Like)

10 bees had turned the engine into a hive. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: make the cake

S1: Did she make the cake herself?

S2: Good heavens no! She had it made in town.

cut her hair polish the car

make the curtains sharpen those knives

clean her coat repair her watch

mend the typewriter translate the article

2

T: hair-cut

S1: How nice your hair looks!

S2: Thank you. I've just had it cut.

carpet-cleaned car-washed

kitchen-painted furniture-installed

floor-polished suit-made

house-redecorated roses-sprayed

3

T: photos-your passport-taken

S1: You'll need some photos for your passport.

S2: I'll have some taken next week.

heating/ gas fires-the winter-installed

warm clothes/ boots-the journey-made

oil/ safety belts-your car-put in

tables/ chairs-the meeting-sent round

4

T: clean his suit

S1: He says he's got to clean his suit.

S2: He can't clean it himself! Why doesn't he have it cleaned?

mend the stereo lay the carpet

test the engine rebuild the garage

paint the gate decorate the house

cut the trees down install the lighting

Tell the story

- 1 a Lancaster bomber-Walks
- 2 it-badly-damaged
- 3 years-forgotten-wreck-undisturbed
- 4 1989-rediscovered-survey
- 5 By this time-bomber-reasonable condition-rare
- 6 French-packaged-moved-France
- 7 enthusiasts-restored
- 8 delight-found-fourth engine-sweet-honey
- 9 bees-turned-hive-preserved-beeswax

Topics for discussion

- 1 Tell us about any plane crash you've heard about recently.
- 2 Tell us about the pleasure of restoring old cars or planes.
- 3 Tell us about what you know about the habits of bees.

Key to Summary writing

The Lancaster bomber was not too badly damaged when it crashed on a remote island in the South Pacific. Then the wreck remained undisturbed for twenty-six years until it was rediscovered in an aerial survey of the island. The French authorities had the plane packaged and moved in parts back to France, where a group of enthusiasts will be having it restored. They will have to have three of the engines rebuilt, but the fourth engine is still in perfect condition because a colony of bees had turned it into a hive and it was totally covered in beeswax.

Lesson 67 Volcanoes

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who is Haroun Tazieff? (A Polish scientist.)
- 2 What has he spent his lifetime doing? (Studying active volcanoes and deep caves.)
- 3 Where did he go in 1948? (Lake Kivu.)
- 4 Why did he go there? (To observe a new volcano.)
- 5 Where was Tazieff able to set up camp? (Very close to the volcano.)
- 6 What did he manage to do? (To take a number of brilliant photographs.)
- 7 He couldn't stay near the volcano for very long, could he?
(No, he couldn't.)
- 8 What did he notice coming towards him? (A river of liquid rock.)
- 9 What did it threaten to do? (To surround him completely.)
- 10 Was Tazieff surrounded or did he manage to escape? (He managed to escape.)
- 11 When was he able to return? (When the volcano had become quiet.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if Haroun Tazieff is Polish.

S: Is Haroun Tazieff Polish?

T: What nationality...?

S: What nationality is Haroun Tazieff?

1 Haroun Tazieff is Polish. (What nationality)

2 he is a scientist. (What)

3 he studies active volcanoes. (What)

4 he also studies deep caves. (What else)

5 he's been in all parts of the world. (Where) (Who)

6 he went to Lake Kivu in 1948. (When)

7 it's in the Congo. (Where) (What)

8 he went to observe a new volcano. (Why)

9 he later named it Kituro. (What)

10 he was able to set up his camp very close to the volcano. (Where)

11 it was erupting violently. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: see Tom

S1: Did you manage to see Tom yesterday?

S2: No, I won't be able to see him until next week.

meet the manager speak to the pilot

sell the tickets write your article

examine the cave talk to the prisoner

apply for the job translate the letter

2

T: got into university-a scholarship

S1: I hear he's got into university.

S2: Yes, and he managed to get a scholarship, too!

sold his car/ motorbike-a good price

passed the exam/ test-excellent marks

bought a Ford/ Fiat-the latest model

written a book/ play-good reviews

3

T: my book-read

S1: What do you think of my book?

S2: I'm afraid I haven't managed to read it yet.

that play/ film/ exhibition-see

the new plane/ car/ spaceship-examine

his latest record/ song-listen to

the firm's report/ offer/ sales-study

4

T: see the play

S1: It's a pity he couldn't see the play.

S2: Oh, didn't you know? He managed to see it after all.

visit Mary go to the meeting

get the job attend the lecture

sell the boat watch the match

fly the plane make the journey

Tell the story

- 1 Tazieff-Polish-lifetime studying-volcanoes-caves-all parts-world
- 2 1948-Lake Kivu-new volcano-Kituro
- 3 able-camp-close-while-erupting
- 4 managed-photographs-not stay-long
- 5 river-liquid rock-but-to escape
- 6 waited-return-two days later
- 7 This time-climb-mouth of Kituro-photographs-measure temperatures
- 8 able-tell-more about-any man alive

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever seen a volcano/ been into a deep cave? Describe your experience.
- 2 Suppose that you were going to become a professional photographer. (What subjects) would you choose to photograph and why?
- 3 Should people risk their lives to study volcanoes? What is your opinion?

Key to Summary writing

Tazieff, the Polish scientist, went to Lake Kivu in the Congo in 1948 to observe a new volcano which he called Kituro. After taking photographs, he had to leave almost at once because a river of liquid rock threatened to surround him. He escaped just in time but he returned two days later when the volcano had become quiet. This time he climbed into the mouth of Kituro in order to take photographs and measure temperatures.

Lesson 68 Persistent

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who did you see? (Nigel Dykes.)
- 2 Why did you cross the street? (To avoid meeting him.)
- 3 What did he do when he saw you? (He came running towards me.)
- 4 Why did you wave to him? (Because I couldn't pretend that I had not seen him.)
- 5 You never enjoy meeting him, do you? (No, I don't.)
- 6 Does he ever have anything to do? (No, he doesn't.)
- 7 What does he always insist on doing? (On coming with me.)
- 8 It doesn't matter how busy you are, does it? (No, it doesn't.)
- 9 Did you want him to follow you around all morning? (No, I didn't.)
- 10 What did you have to think of? (A way of preventing him from following me around.)
- 11 You said 'Hello' to each other, didn't you? (Yes, we did.)
- 12 What was Nigel wondering? (How to spend the morning.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I saw Nigel Dykes coming towards me.

S: Did you see Nigel Dykes coming towards you?

T: Who...?

S: Who did you see coming towards you?

1 I saw Nigel Dykes coming towards me. (Who)

2 I crossed the street. (When)

3 I crossed the street to avoid meeting him. (What...do) (Why)

4 he saw me. (Who)

5 he came running towards me. (Who)

6 I waved to him. (Who...to)

7 I don't enjoy meeting Nigel. (Why)

8 he always follows people around. (Who)

9 I said, 'Hello, Nigel. '(What)

10 I said I was going to the dentist. (What) (Where)

11 there's always plenty to read in the waiting room. (What) (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: see the film

S1: I was looking forward to seeing the film.

S2: Well, you can't see it, so it's no use thinking about it.

go to the concert visit my friends

watch that match do that experiment

hear the CDs read those books

act in that play run in that race

2

T: a car/ woman coming-see

S1: There's a car/ woman coming.

S2: Where? I can't see anything/ one coming.

a child crying/ a woman laughing-hear

a man running/a policeman coming-see

a fire burning/ something cooking-smell

someone shouting/ a girl singing-hear

3

T: call John

S1: Would you mind calling John for me?

S2: No, of course I don't mind calling him for you.

open the window iron my shirt

wake the children check these figures

play the piano lock the door

cook lunch answer the phone

4

T: riding

S1: Will you come riding with us?

S2: There's no point in my coming riding with you. I can't ride!

swimming climbing

shooting fishing

sailing dancing

hunting running

Tell the story

- 1 crossed the street-avoid meeting him-saw me-came running
- 2 no use-hadn't seen-waved
- 3 I never enjoy-Nigel Dykes
- 4 never-to do-insists-coming with
- 5 had to think-prevent-following me
- 6 He-wondering-and asked if-busy
- 7 told him-dentist-and he asked-mind-with me. I lied-'not at all'
- 8 said he'd come-plenty to read in

Topics for discussion

- 1 What sort of people do you try to avoid? Why?
- 2 What method would you use to try to avoid (a) meeting someone you didn't like or (b) doing something you didn't want to do?
- 3 If you didn't have to work for a living, would you work anyway? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Even though Elizabeth tried to avoid meeting Nigel Dykes, she was not able to do so. As he always insisted on accompanying her, she had to think of a way of preventing him from following her around all morning. When she told him she was going to the dentist, he said he would come with her because there was always plenty to read in the waiting room.

Lesson 69 But not murder!

Comprehension questions

- 1 What were you being tested for? (My driving license.)
- 2 Was it the second or the third time? (The third.)
- 3 What had you been asked to do? (To drive in heavy traffic.)
- 4 You'd done it successfully, hadn't you? (Yes, I had.)
- 5 When did you begin to acquire confidence? (After having been instructed to drive out of town.)
- 6 Why were you almost beginning to enjoy your test? (Because I was sure that I had passed.)
- 7 Who smiled? (The examiner did.)
- 8 What did this make you think? (That he must have been pleased with my performance.)
- 9 Did he ask you to do one more thing? (Yes, he did.)
- 10 What were you asked to suppose? (That a child suddenly crossed the road in front of me.)
- 11 When did he want the car to be stopped?
(When he tapped on the window.)
- 12 When did the examiner tap loudly? (After some time.)
- 13 Could the sound be heard clearly? (Yes, it could.)
- 14 Did you react immediately? (No, I didn't.)
- 15 What did you press?(The brake pedal.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I was being tested for my driving license.

S: Were you being tested for your driving license?

T: What...for?

S: What were you being tested for?

1 I was being tested for my driving license. (What...for)(Why)

2 it was my third test. (Which)

3 I'd been asked to drive in heavy traffic. (Where)

4 I'd done so successfully. (How)

5 I began to acquire confidence. (What)

6 I'd been instructed to drive out of town. (Which way)(Who)

7 I was almost beginning to enjoy my test. (What)(Why)

8 the examiner must have been pleased with my performance.

(What...with) (Why)

9 he smiled. (What...do) (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: confess-arrested

S1: Did the man confess?

S2: Yes, but only after being arrested !

leave the hotel/restaurant-thrown out

give up the fight/argument-knocked out

become famous/well known-murdered

call the police/guard-robbed

2

T: became famous-his murder.

S1: He became famous after his murder.

S2: Oh no! He became famous BEFORE being murdered.

confessed/killed the guard-his arrest

called the police/fell down-the attack

phoned Mary/saw Tom-his interview

fell ill/became rich-his election

3

T: send the fax to Hong Kong

S1: When do you want the fax sent to Hong Kong?

S2: It should be sent some time today.

return/take the books to the library

send/deliver the goods to the shop

collect/fetch the luggage from the hotel

announce/explain the result to the Press

4

T: ask-your report

S1: I'd like to ask you about your report.

S2: Not again! I was being asked about my report all day yesterday!

consult/ask-our sales figures

question/interview-your latest film

advise/remind-the need for economy

inform/tell the firm's future plans

Tell the story

- 1 being tested-driving license-third time
- 2 asked-in heavy traffic-successfully
- 3 After-out of town-confidence
- 4 sure-passed-almost-enjoy
- 5 examiner must-pleased-smiled
- 6 suppose-child-cross-in front of
- 7 As soon as-tap-car-stop-five feet
- 8 continued-some time-loudly
- 9 long time-pressed-brake-forward
- 10 examiner-'just killed that child'

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever been over-confident and made a mistake? Tell us about it.
- 2 What particular things would you look out for if you were giving someone a driving test?
- 3 Apart from bad driving, what else can cause road accidents? How can we try to prevent these?

Key to Summary writing

Mr. Eames had driven successfully through heavy traffic during his third driving test when the examiner instructed him to drive out of town. He told him to suppose that a child would suddenly cross the road in front of him. Mr. Eames would have to stop the car within five feet when the examiner tapped on the window. Though he tapped loudly, Mr. Eames did not react quickly enough and was told that he had just killed the child.

Lesson 70 Red for danger

Comprehension questions

- 1 Was there a crowd watching a bullfight?(Yes, there was.)
- 2 Who suddenly wandered into the middle of the ring?(A drunk did.)
- 3 What did the crowd begin to do?(To shout.)
- 4 Was the drunk aware of the danger?(No, he wasn't.)
- 5 Why didn't the bull notice the drunk at first? (It was busy with the matador.)
- 6 Did it suddenly catch sight of him?(Yes, it did.)
- 7 What was the drunk shouting? (Rude remarks.)
- 8 Was he waving a red cap or a blue one?(A red cap.)
- 9 Why did the bull forget all about the matador? (Because it caught sight of the drunk.)
- 10 It charged at the drunk, didn't it? (Yes, it did.)
- 11 What did the crowd do? (The crowd suddenly grew quiet.)
- 12 Did the drunk seem afraid? (No, he didn't.)
- 13 Who seemed quite sure of himself? (The drunk did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if a drunk was at a bullfight.

S: Was a drunk at a bullfight?

T: Who...?

S: Who was at a bullfight?

- 1 a drunk was at a bullfight. (Who)
- 2 he suddenly wandered into the middle of the ring.(Where) (Who)
- 3 the crowd began to shout. (Who)
- 4 the drunk was unaware of the danger. (What)(Why)(Who)
- 5 the bull was busy with the matador. (Who)
- 6 the drunk shouted rude remarks. (What)
- 7 he waved a red cap. (What)(Who)
- 8 the bull suddenly caught sight of him. (Who)(When)
- 9 it seemed to be sensitive to criticism. (What...do)
- 10 it forgot about the matador. (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: grateful for your help

S1: What did you say she was grateful for?

S2: I said she was grateful for your help.

keen on tennis qualified in physics

afraid of ghosts uneasy about her job

bad at French famous for her beauty

guilty of murder content with her life

2

T: sorry for those poor children

S1: Who did you say he was sorry for?

S2: He's sorry for those poor children.

jealous of you useful to his boss

grateful to me rude to his parents

fond of Jane afraid of his father

angry with us faithful to his wife

3

T: write stories-very good

S1: Can she write stories?

S2: Yes, she can. She's very good at writing.

drive a car/fly a plane-very skilful

type letters/organize classes-efficient

sing opera/compose music-expert

run fast/swim/shoot/ski-very good

4

T: faithful to the boss-frightened

S1: Why's he so faithful to the boss?

S2: Because he's frightened of him, I suppose.

cruel to his brother/sister-jealous

polite to you/his manager-afraid

good to that child/dog-fond

rude to me/ all of us-envious

Tell the story

- 1 bullfight-a drunk-middle-ring
- 2 crowd-shout-but-unaware-danger
- 4 bull-forgot-charged at-drunk
- 3 bull-busy-caught sight-drunk
- 5 crowd-quiet, but-drunk-sure
- 6 bull-close-stepped aside-pass
- 7 crowd-cheers-drunk bowed
- 8 3 men-into ring-dragged-to safety
- 9 Even-bull-looked on-before turning

Topics for discussion

- 1 Some people think that bullfighting and other blood sports, such as cockfighting, hunting, etc. are cruel. How would you (a) defend them(b) criticize them?
- 2 What do you consider the most dangerous sport? Why do you think people enjoy(a) taking part in and, (b) watching such a sport?

Key to Summary writing

A drunk suddenly wandered into the middle of the ring during a bullfight and shouted rude remarks and waved a red cap. Ignoring the matador, the bull charged at the drunk, but he stepped aside to let it pass. The crowd cheered and the drunk bowed. Just after this, three men dragged the drunk to safety while the bull looked on sympathetically before it once more turned its attention to the matador.

Lesson 71 A famous clock

Comprehension questions

- 1 What's the name of the famous clock in London? (Big Ben.)
- 2 Is it one of the first things you'll see when you visit London? (Yes, it is.)
- 3 It can be heard all over the world, can't it? (Yes, it can.)
- 4 Which radio station can it be heard on? (On the B. B. C.)
- 5 What is the B. B. C.? (The British Broadcasting Corporation.)
- 6 What happened to the Houses of Parliament in 1834? (They were burned down.)
- 7 Was Big Ben burned in the fire, too?(No, it wasn't.)
- 8 Who was responsible for making Big Ben?(Sir Benjamin Hall was.)
- 9 Big Ben is called after him, isn't it? (Yes, it is.)
- 10 How big is the clock? (Immense.)
- 11 How accurate is it? (Extremely accurate.)
- 12 How often is it checked? (Twice a day.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Big Ben is a famous clock.

S: Is Big Ben a famous clock?

T: What...?

S: What is Big Ben?

- 1 Big Ben is a famous clock. (What)
- 2 it's in London. (Where)
- 3 it's one of the first things a visitor sees. (What)
- 4 it can be heard all over the world. (Where)(Why)(What)
- 5 you can hear it on the B. B. C. (How)
- 6 it's called after Sir Benjamin Hall. (Who)
- 7 he was responsible for making the clock. (What)(Who)
- 8 the Houses of Parliament were burnt down in 1834.(What)(When)
- 9 the clock was made when the new Houses of Parliament were being built. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: buy a car saving up

S1: Will she be able to buy a car next year?

S2: I think so. She'll have been saving up for it for three years by then.

get her degree/get a diploma-studying

pass her exam/ take the test-preparing

marry John/get the job-waiting

find the gold/ discover the cave-looking

2

T: applied for the job-thinking about

S1: So John's finally applied for the job!

S2: Yes, he applied for it yesterday, but he'd been thinking about it for ages!

found his wallet/tools-looking for

married Mary/his secretary-asking

finished his book/article-writing

sold his land/farm-talking about

3

T: go on the stage-actor

S1: What a pity Jim didn't go on the stage!

S2: Yes, isn't it! He could have been a famous actor!

study art/music-artist/composer

publish his story/poems-writer/poet

study medicine/law-doctor/judge

join the army/navy-general/admiral

4

T: wait for Tom

S1: Did we have to wait for Tom?

S2: Well, he'd have been very angry if we hadn't waited for him!

speak to Mary phone your boss

vote for John call on your aunt

help Jane go with the Smiths

visit your mother wave to the children

Tell the story

- 1 London-one of the first-Big Ben-famous clock-heard all over-B. B. C.
- 2 Houses of Parliament-burnt down-1834
- 3 Big Ben-name-Sir Benjamin Hall-responsible-when the new-being built
- 4 immense size-extremely accurate
- 5 Officials from Greenwich-twice a day
- 6 B. B. C. -hear-striking-microphones
- 7 rarely-wrong, but once-painter-pot of paint-hands-slowed it down

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe a famous building you have visited and tell what you know of its history.
- 2 Why is it necessary to have an international standard measure of time?
- 3 How many foreign radio stations can you get on your radio?
Which do you listen to most frequently? Why?

Key to Summary writing

After the Houses of Parliament were burnt down in 1834, Sir Benjamin Hall was made responsible for the construction of a huge clock, which became known as Big Ben. It is very accurate despite its immense size, for officials from the Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day. This clock, which has rarely gone wrong, can be heard on the B. B. C. When it is striking, because microphones are connected to the clock tower.

Lesson 72 A car called Bluebird

Comprehension questions

- 1 Was Sir Malcolm Campbell a great racing driver or a famous footballer?
(A great racing driver.)
- 2 What was he the first man to do?(To drive at over 300 miles per hour.)
- 3 When did he set up a new world record?(In 1935.)
- 4 Where did he do it?(At Bonneville Salt Flats.)
- 5 What was the name of the car he was driving?(Bluebird.)
- 6 Had it been specially built for him?(Yes, it had.)
- 7 How long was it?(Over 30 feet.)
- 8 How powerful was its engine?(2, 500 horsepower.)
- 9 What speed did Campbell reach?(Over 304 miles per hour.)
- 10 Why did he have great difficulty in controlling his car?
(Because a tyre burst.)
- 11 Why was he disappointed at first?
(Because his average speed was said to be 299 miles per hour.)
- 12 Had someone made a mistake? (Yes, they had.)
- 13 What was his average speed? (301 miles per hour.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Sir Malcolm Campbell was the first man to drive at over 300 m. p. h.

S: Was Sir Malcolm Campbell the first man to drive at over 300 m. p. h.?

T: Who...?

S: Who was the first man to drive at over 300 m. p. h. ?

1 Sir Malcolm Campbell was the first man to drive at over 300 m. p. h. (Who)

2 he set up a new world record in September 1935. (When)(Who)

3 he was racing at Bonneville Salt Flats, Utah. (Where)(When)

4 his car was called Bluebird. (What)(Whose)

5 It had been specially built for him. (Who)

6 it was over 30 feet long. (How long)

7 it had a 2, 500 horsepower engine. (What kind of)

8 Campbell's top speed was 304 miles per hour. (What)(Whose)

9 a tyre burst on the first run. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: draw the map-wrong

S1: Why did she have to draw the map again?

S2: Mr. Bates thought she'd drawn it wrong, so he made her draw it again.

type the address/fill the form in-wrong

count the money/do the accounts-wrong

wrap the parcel/write the letter-badly

do the flowers/clean the room-badly

2

T: come

S1: How did you get them to come?

S2: It wasn't difficult to persuade them to come, actually.

play football lend you some money

write the article see a doctor

take the job take the medicine

act in the play go to the dentist's

3

T: leave so quietly-hear him

S1: Why did he leave so quietly?

S2: So that no one would hear him.

wear dark glasses-recognize/know him

put the glasses away-break/damage them

hide the money-spend/find it

sit at the back-see/notice him

4

T: arrive so early-miss anything

S1: Why did he arrive so early?

S2: So as not to miss anything.

leave so quietly-disturb/wake anyone

wear a coat-feel/catch cold

pack the umbrella-forget/lose it

drive so fast-be/arrive late

Tell the story

- 1 Sir Malcolm-first man-300 m. p. h.
- 2 new world record-1935-Utah
- 3 Bluebird-specially built-30 feet - 2,500 horsepower
- 4 over 304 m. p. h. -tyre burst-first run
- 5 disappointed-average speed-299m. p. h.
- 6 later-told-mistake-301 m. p. h.
- 7 son, Donald-also-world record
- 8 Like his father-car-Bluebird

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you enjoy travelling at great speed? Why/Why not?
- 2 No one can use a car like Bluebird on the road, so what is the purpose in building it?
- 3 In the modern world, 'speed' sometimes seems to be all important. Do you think this is a good or a bad thing? Should we try to slow down a little? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Sir Malcolm Campbell set up a land-speed record in 1935 driving a car called Bluebird, which had been specially built for him. His average speed was incorrectly declared to be 299 miles per hour, but this mistake was corrected later. He had averaged 301 miles an hour. Years later, his son, Donald, also broke a record and his car was also called Bluebird.

Lesson 73 The record – holder

Comprehension questions

- 1 Are children who play truant from school imaginative?(No, they aren't.)
- 2 How do they usually spend their time?(Fishing or seeing a film.)
- 3 Do they usually travel far?(No, they don't.)
- 4 They've been put to shame by one boy, haven't they?(Yes, they have.)
- 5 How far did he travel while playing truant?(1, 600 miles.)
- 6 Where did he go first?(To Dover.)
- 7 How did he get there?(By hitchhiking.)
- 8 Where did he go towards evening?(Into a boat.)
- 9 What did he want to do?(To find somewhere to sleep.)
- 10 Where was he when he woke up?(In Calais.)
- 11 Did anyone notice him creep off the boat?(No, they didn't.)
- 12 How did he get to Paris?(By hitchhiking.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if some children play truant from school.

S: Do some children play truant from school?

T: Who...?

S: Who play truant from school?

- 1 some children play truant from school. (Who)(What...do)
- 2 most of them are unimaginative. (How many)
- 3 they spend a day fishing. (How)
- 4 they go to the cinema sometimes. (Where)
- 5 they see the same film over and over again. (How many times)
- 6 one boy has put them all to shame. (Who)
- 7 he travelled 1, 600 miles while playing truant. (How far)(When)
- 8 he hitchhiked to Dover. (Where)
- 9 he went into a boat towards evening. (When)(Where)(Why)
- 10 he wanted to sleep. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: found him-somewhere to sleep

S1: What was he doing when you found him?

S2: He was looking for somewhere to sleep.

met him-someone to talk to/go out with

met them-something to read/buy/do

saw her-somewhere to hide/put the money

found him-someone to help him/play with

2

T: burnt your arm-ironing

S1: Oh dear! You've burnt your arm!

S2: Yes, I burnt it when I was ironing.

broken the cup/vase-dusting the shelf

lost a glove/shoe-chasing a thief

torn your coat/trousers-climbing a tree

hurt your leg/foot-playing football

3

T: worn that dress-for the picnic

S1: She hasn't worn that dress before.

S2: Yes, she has. It's the dress she wore for the picnic last month.

read this book/magazine-in hospital

spoken to that boy/girl-on the telephone

seen that film/play/show-in London

heard that song/joke/story-on the radio

4

T: Paris-in a lorry

S1: How did you get to Paris?

S2: I got there in a lorry.

the house-in a taxi/on foot/by bus

Canada-by plane/by air/in a jumbo jet

the island-in a boat/by swimming

the village-by helicopter/by train

Tell the story

- 1 children who-truant-unimaginative
- 2 fishing-samen film over-as far as
- 3 put to shame-boy-1, 600 miles
- 4 hitchhiked Dover-boat sleep
- 5 Woke up-discovered-boat-Calais
- 6 No one noticed-boy-crept off
- 7 From-hitchhiked-Paris-lorry
- 8 driver gave him-left-just outside
- 9 next-not-centre-Perpignan-border
- 10 There-picked up-England-authorities

Topics for Discussion

- 1 Describe any adventure that you or someone you know has had while travelling.
- 2 What would you do if you played truant from school/took a day off work?
- 3 What are the advantages/disadvantages of 'hitchhiking' as a method of travelling?

Key to Summary writing

A boy who played truant travelled 1, 600 miles. He hitchhiked to Dover where he slept in a boat, only to find himself in Calais the next morning. A lorry driver gave him a lift and something to eat, and the boy got off near Paris. He stopped another car but, instead of being taken to Paris, he was taken to Perpignan on the French-Spanish border. After being picked up by a policeman, he was sent home by the local authorities.

A boy played truant from school and travelled 1, 600 miles. After hitchhiking to Dover, he slept in a boat. The next morning he found himself in Calais, where a lorry driver gave him a lift and something to eat. On getting off near Paris, he stopped another car which did not take him to Paris but to Perpignan on the French Spanish border. There he was picked up by a policeman and sent home by the local authorities.

Lesson 74 Out of the limelight

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where did the bus stop? (By a dry river bed.)
- 2 Was it a new one? (No, it wasn't.)
- 3 Who got off? (A party of famous actors and actresses.)
- 4 How were they dressed? (In dark glasses and old clothes.)
- 5 Why had they dressed like this? (Because they didn't want to be recognized.)
- 6 What did they soon discover? (That disguises can sometimes be too perfect.)
- 7 Did Gloria Glean approve of their picnicking place? (Yes, she did.)
- 8 Did Brinksley Meers agree with her? (Yes, he did.)
- 9 What were its advantages? (There weren't any newspaper men or film fans.)
- 10 What had Rock wall Slinger and Merlin Greeves done during this conversation? (They had carried two food baskets in to the shade of some trees.)
- 11 When did the sheriff appear? (When they had made themselves comfortable.)
- 12 What did he point out to them? (A notice saying, 'No Camping'.)
- 13 Did Rock wall expect the sheriff to recognize him? (Yes, he did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if an ancient bus stopped by a dry river bed.

S: Did an ancient bus stopped by a dry river bed?

T: What kind of...?

S: What kind of bus stopped by a dry river bed?

- 1 an ancient bus stopped by a dry river bed. (What kind of (Where)
- 2 a party of famous actors and actresses got off. (Who) (When)
- 3 they were dressed in dark glasses and old clothes. (How) (Why) (Who)
- 4 they'd come for a picnic. (What) (Why)
- 5 they had taken special precautions so that no one should recognize them. (Why)
- 6 disguises can sometimes be too perfect. (What) (Why)
- 7 it was a wonderful place for a picnic. (What kind of)
- 8 they got out their food. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: wearing your glasses -hate

S1: Why aren't you wearing your glasses?

S2: Because I hate wearing them.

polishing/cleaning the car -don't like

washing/drying the dishes -dislike

talking to/entertaining Frank -hate

watching/playing football -don't enjoy

2

T: wears glasses

S1: John always wears glasses.

S2: Are you sure?. He isn't wearing any today.

takes a taxi reads a newspaper

catches a bus carries an umbrella

smokes a cigar buys cigarettes here

wears gloves uses a fountain pen

3

T: pen -No/Yes

S1: I'm using your pen. Do you mind?

S2: No, it's all right. I don't need it just now. / Yes, I do.

I want to use it myself.

computer -No/Yes hammer -No/Yes

dictionary -Yes/No knife -Yes/No

ladder -Yes/No pencil -Yes/No

mirror -No/Yes ruler -No/Yes

4

T: she's doing -see

S1: What's she doing?

S2: I don't know what she's doing. I can't see anything.

he's saying/singing/talking about -hear

she's cooking/burning -smell

they're making/playing/writing -see

we're eating/drinking -taste

Tell the story

- 1 bus -river bed -party of -got off
- 2 dressed in -precautions -recognize
- 3 discovered -sometimes -too perfect
- 4 Gloria Glean -wonderful place -picnic
- 5 Brinkley Meers -no newspaper men -fans
- 6 other actors -food -shady spot
- 7 comfortable -stranger -angry
- 8 sheriff -notice -No Camping
- 9 Rockwall told -who they were
- 10 didn't believe -ordered -get out

Topics for discussion

- 1 If you were famous, would you try to hide from the public? Why/Why not?
- 2 If the sheriff in the story had recognized the film stars, Do you think he (a) would (b) should have allowed them to stay? Why/Why not?
- 3 What problems and/or advantages do very famous or very rich people have?

Key to Summary writing

After an ancient bus had stopped by a dry river bed, a party of famous film stars descended. They were dressed in dark glasses and old clothes so as not to be recognized. Two of the actors carried some picnic things to a shady spot and everyone sat down. Just then a sheriff arrived and told them rudely that they must leave because camping was not allowed. Even when they told him who they were, he did not believe them.

An ancient bus stopped by a dry river bed. A party of famous film stars descended, dressed in dark glasses and old clothes in order that no one should recognize them. Two of the actors carried the picnic things to a shady spot. Everyone had sat down when a sheriff appeared and told them rudely that they must leave, as camping was not allowed there. They told him who they were but he did not believe them.

Lesson 75 SoS

Comprehension questions

- 1 When did the plane crash? (Some time ago.)
- 2 Where did it crash? (In the mountains.)
- 3 Who was killed? (The pilot was.)
- 4 How many passengers were there? (Three.)
- 5 Were they injured or unhurt? (Unhurt.)
- 6 What time of the year was it? (Midwinter.)
- 7 How far away was the nearest village? (Miles away.)
- 8 What did the woman use for a bed? (A suitcase.)
- 9 Who slept inside it? (The two baby girls.)
- 10 What did the woman cover them with?(All the clothes she could find.)
- 11 Why did she keep as close as possible to her two babies?
(It was terribly cold.)
- 12 Why couldn't she get inside the case? (It was too small.)
- 13 When did she hear the planes? (Early next morning.)
- 14 What did she wonder? (How she could send a signal.)
- 15 How did she solve her problem? (She stamped out the letters SOS in the snow.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if a light passenger plane flew off course.

S: Did a light passenger plane fly off course?

T: What kind of ...?

S: What kind of plane flew off course?

1 a light passenger plane flew off course. (What kind of)

2 it crashed in the mountains. (Where)

3 its pilot was killed. (Who)

4 there were three passengers. (How many)

5 the young woman and her two baby daughters were unhurt. (Who)

6 it was the middle of winter. (What time of year)

7 snow lay thick on the ground. (What)

8 the nearest village was miles away. (How far)

9 she turned a suitcase into a bed. (What)

10 she put the children inside it. (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: enter for a race -win

S1: Did he really enter for a race?

S2: He entered for several and he even won one!

write a story/book -publish/sell

see a thief/murderer-catch/arrest

design a boat/plane -build/fly

take an exam/a test -get through/pass

2

T: punish that boy

S1: Why did you punish that boy yesterday?

S2: I didn't punish him. No one did.

arrest that woman break the window

buy that house fly that plane

invite those people accept his excuse

do that job steal the money

3

T: hot -climbing

S1: You look hot. What've you been doing?

S2: I went climbing this morning and got very hot.

thirsty -running cold -fishing

dirty -riding hungry -skiing

tired -swimming sunburnt -walking

angry -shopping excited -sailing

4

T: thank your host -politely

S1: Did you remember to thank your host?

S2: Yes. I thanked him as politely as I could.

send/deliver my message -quickly

wrap up/pack up the parcel -carefully

return/take back my library book -soon

dust/tidy up your room -well

Tell the story

- 1 plane -off course -crashed -pilot
- 2 passengers -woman -two -unhurt
- 3 winter and snow -thick-ground
- 4 woman knew -village -miles away
- 5 dark -suitcase -children -covered
- 6 During -night -cold
- 7 as near as -even tried -too small
- 8 morning -planes -wondered -signal
- 9 idea -stamped -SOS -snow
- 10 pilot saw -message-not long -rescue

Topics for discussion

- 1 In what other ways could the woman have tried to attract the pilot's attention?
- 2 Have you (or anyone you know) ever had a lucky escape? Describe the experience.
- 3 If you had the choice of making a long journey by ship, by plane or by train, which would you choose and why?

Key to Summary writing

A plane crashed in the mountains, but the only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were not hurt. It was midwinter and extremely cold, so the woman put the children in a case, covered them with clothes and kept close to them all night. When she heard planes early next morning, she stamped out SOS in the snow. This was seen by a pilot, who sent a radio message, and they were soon rescued by a helicopter.

When a plane crashed in the mountains, the only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were not hurt. However, it was midwinter and extremely cold. After putting the children in a case and covering them with clothes, the woman kept close to them all night. On hearing planes early next morning, the woman stamped out SOS in the snow, which was seen by a pilot. A message was sent and they were soon rescued by a helicopter.

Lesson 76 April Fools' Day

Comprehension questions

- 1 When was there a special news bulletin on television? (On April 1st.)
- 2 How did the bulletin end? (By giving the date, April 1st.)
- 3 What is grown in Calabria? (Macaroni.)
- 4 How long has it been grown there? (For over 600 years.)
- 5 Who are Giuseppe Moldova and Riccardo Brabante? (Two of the leading growers in the area.)
- 6 What have they been expecting this year? (A splendid crop.)
- 7 Has harvesting already begun? (Yes, it has.)
- 8 The film showed two workers, didn't it? (Yes, it did.)
- 9 What had they just finished cutting?
(Three cart-loads of golden brown macaroni stalks.)
- 10 Have all the villagers been working day and night? (Yes, they have.)
- 11 Why have they been working day and night? (Because they want to finish gathering and threshing the crop before the September rains.)
- 12 Whose wife appeared in the film? (Riccardo Brabante's.)
- 13 How long has she been helping him? (For thirty years.)
- 14 Who was she talking to? (The manager of the local factory.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if it was Thursday, April 1st.

S: Was it Thursday?

T: What day ...?

S: What day was it?

1 it was Thursday, April 1st. (What day)

2 there was a special news bulletin on television. (What) (When)

3 it ended with a programme about macaroni growing. (What...with)

4 viewers were shown the macaroni fields of Calabria. (What)

5 macaroni has been grown there for over six hundred years. (How long)
(Where)

6 the leading growers have been expecting a splendid crop this year.
(What) (Who)

7 the film showed two workers. (How many)

8 everyone has been working day and night. (How hard) (Why) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: grow a beard

S1: He's growing a beard.

S2: Whatever for? He hasn't grown one before, has he?

have an operation make a film

give a speech enter a competition

write a book employ a secretary

buy a dog build a garage

2

T: his beard -grow

S1: What do you think of his beard?

S2: It's all right, but he hasn't been growing it for long, has he?

my English -learn his boat -sail

her car-drive her pupils -teach

his glasses -wear my violin -play

my camera -use their work- do

3

T: telephone me

S1: He's been telephoning me all morning.

S2: Don't exaggerate! He's only telephoned you twice.

interrupt me complain

repeat himself drop asleep

shout at me ring the doorbell

rush in and out ask me for coffee

4

T: read magazines

S1: Have you been reading magazines all the time I've been away?

S2: No, I haven't read any since you left.

write letters smoke cigarettes

do housework drink tea

listen to music eat chocolates

paint pictures answer questions

Tell the story

- 1 end -news bulletin -viewers -taken -Calabria -macaroni -grown for over
- 2 growers -expecting -crop this year -harvesting -earlier than usual
- 3 see two workers -cutting three cartloads -macaroni stalks
- 4 whole village -day and night -gathering -threshing -rains
- 5 wife of one -shown talking to -local factory -crop -processed
- 6 last scene -end of harvest -competition
- 7 present champion -won -since 1991

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe a practical joke you have played, or would like to play, on someone.
- 2 How do people celebrate the end of harvest in your part of the country?
- 3 Many British viewers were taken in by this news. Why do you think this was so?

Key to Summary writing

To end the special news bulletin, the television announcer showed viewers the macaroni fields of Calabria, where macaroni has been grown for over six hundred years. Harvesting has begun earlier this year and the whole village has been working hard, gathering and threshing the crop before the September rains. The crop is processed in the local factory. After the harvest, the famous Calabrian macaroni-eating competition, which Signor Fratelli has won every year since 1991, will take place. That ended the news bulletin for April 1st.

To end the news bulletin, the television announcer showed viewers the fields of Calabria. Here, macaroni has been grown for over six hundred years. This year, harvesting has begun earlier. The whole village has been working hard, gathering and threshing before the September rains so that the crop can be processed in the local factory. After the harvest, the famous macaroni-eating competition will be held. This has been won by Signor Fratelli every year since 1991. With that, the news bulletin for April 1st ended.

Lesson 77 A successful operation

Comprehension questions

- 1 When did the Egyptian woman die? (In 800 B. C.)
- 2 Her body was mummified, wasn't it? (Yes, it was.)
- 3 What's just happened to the mummy? (It has had an operation.)
- 4 What was the woman's name? (Shepenmut.)
- 5 What did she once do? (She was a singer.)
- 6 What showed up on the X-ray plates? (Strange marks.)
- 7 What have doctors been trying to do? (To find out whether the woman died of a rare disease.)
- 8 How long did the operation last? (For over four hours.)
- 9 Why did it prove to be so difficult? (Because of the hard resin that covered the skin.)
- 10 What did the doctors remove? (A section of the mummy.)
- 11 Where did they send it? (To a laboratory.)
- 12 What else did they find? (A small wax figure of the god Duamutef.)
- 13 What kind of head does this god have? (The head of a cow.)
- 14 Where was it normally placed? (Inside a mummy.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if doctors have just operated on a mummy.

S: Have doctors just operated on a mummy?

T: What ...?

S: What have doctors just operated on?

1 doctors have just operated on a mummy. (What) (Why) (Who)

2 the woman died in 800 B. C. (When)

3 her name was Shepenmut. (What)

4 she was a singer. (What) (Who)

5 she used to sing in the Temple of Thebes. (Where) (Who)

6 there were strange marks on the X-ray plates. (What) (Where)

7 doctors have been trying to find out what she died of. (What) (Who)

8 they suspected a rare disease. (What) (Why)

9 the operation lasted for over four hours. (How long) (Why) (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: play football

S1: I didn't know you played football!

S2: Didn't you? I've been playing it for some time now.

wear glasses study art

design dresses mend radios

teach chemistry drive buses

give concerts sell coffee

2

T: sing solo

S1: I didn't know she sang solo!

S2: Didn't you? She's sung solo on several occasions now.

swim/run/play for the school team

act/appear in television plays

write/report for this newspaper

read the news/speak on the radio

3

T: cry-during the film

S1: He's been crying, hasn't he?

S2: Yes, he has. He cried during the film.

ride/run -all the way here

eat garlic/eat raw onions -at lunch

sleep/rest-on your bed for an hour

read/write -for a while after lunch

4

T: play -tennis -at school

S1: You've played tennis before, haven't you?

S2: Yes, I played tennis at school.

speak/sing -on the radio -last month

mend/build -a bridge -during the war

travel/fly -round the world -5 years ago

take/fail -this test -last year

Tell the story

- 1 mummy -woman who -800 B. C. -operation
- 2 Shepenmut -once a singer -Thebes
- 3 strange marks -X-ray plates -doctors -find out if -died -rare disease
- 4 only way -to operate
- 5 four hours -difficult -resin -skin
- 6 doctors removed -section -laboratory
- 7 found -wax figure -god Duamutef
- 8 not yet decided how -died
- 9 feared -pieces -but -survived

Topics for discussion

- 1 How has the discovery of X-rays affected our lives?
- 2 How do religious beliefs influence burial customs in different countries?
- 3 Do you think the doctors' research on the mummy was (a) valuable, (b) morally wrong, (c) interesting but of little or no practical use? Give reasons for your answer.

Key to Summary writing

Doctors have just operated on the mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B. C. They wanted to find out whether she died of a rare disease. After removing a section of the mummy, they sent it to a laboratory. During the operation, they unexpectedly found a small wax figure of a god. Though they were afraid the mummy would fall to pieces, it successfully survived the operation.

Doctors have just operated on the mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B. C., in order to find out if she died of a rare disease. They removed a section of the mummy, which they sent to a laboratory. Inside the mummy, they unexpectedly found a small wax figure of a god. They were afraid the mummy would fall to pieces, but it survived the operation.

Lesson 78 The last one?

Comprehension questions

- 1 What did you read an article on? (On cigarette smoking and health.)
- 2 What did you do afterwards? (I lit a cigarette.)
- 3 Why did you smoke with such concentration and pleasure?
(Because I was sure this would be my last cigarette.)
- 4 How long did you not smoke at all? (For a week.)
- 5 Did your wife suffer? (Yes, she did.)
- 6 What are a bad temper and an enormous appetite the symptoms of?
(Of someone giving up smoking.)
- 7 What did your friends keep on offering you? (Cigarettes and cigars.)
- 8 What happened whenever you produced a packet of sweets? (My friends were amused.)
- 9 When did you go to a party? (Seven days after I stopped smoking.)
- 10 Why did you feel so uncomfortable at the party? (Everybody else was smoking.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if I read an article on cigarette smoking.

S: Did you read an article on cigarette smoking?

T: What...?

S: What did you read?

1 I read an article on cigarette smoking. (What) (Who)

2 I lit a cigarette to calm my nerves. (Why)

3 I smoked with concentration and pleasure. (How) (Why) (Who)

4 I gave up smoking for a whole week. (How long) (What)

5 my wife suffered during this time. (When) (Why) (Who)

6 She suffered terribly. (How badly) (Why)

7 I had the usual symptoms. (What symptoms)

8 I had a bad temper. (When) (Why)

9 my friends kept on offering me cigarettes. (What) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: modern paintings

S1: I can show you some modern paintings.

S2: That's very kind of you, but modern paintings don't interest me very much. new stamps tropical fish card tricks costume jewellery old china long playing records modern art 18th century furniture

2

T: an orange/some fruit

S1: Would you like an orange/some fruit?

S2: No, thank you. I've already got one/some. a pen/some ink.

a coat/some shoes

a pencil/some chalk

a rose/some flowers

a drink/some water

a sweet/some grapes

a cake/some bread

a cigar/some matches

3

T: cake-some more -eaten

S1: There's lots of cake left. Would you like, some more?

S2: No thanks. I've eaten a lot already!

fruit/salad/fish -some more -had

tea/coffee/beer -some more -drunk

cakes/biscuits -another one -eaten

cigars/cigarettes -another one -smoked

4

T: fresh fruit in the shop

S1: Is there any fresh fruit in the shop?

S2: Most of it's fresh, but some of it isn't.

useful information/tests in this book

cheap material/clothes in the sale

interesting news/articles in the paper

old furniture/chairs in the attic

Tell the story

- 1 After reading -article -smoking -health -I decided -give up
- 2 week-didn't smoke -wife suffered
- 3 usual symptoms -temper -appetite
- 4 friends -offering me -and cigars
- 5 amused -I produced -sweets -pocket
- 6 After seven -went -party
- 7 Everybody -smoking -friend -urged me
- 8 took one -smoked -satisfaction
- 9 wife -delighted -normal once more

Topics for discussion

- 1 Why do you think people take up or continue smoking even when they know of its dangers?
- 2 If smoking were prohibited by law, what would the effect be on (a) smokers, (b) cigarette manufacturers, (c) the economy of certain countries?
- 3 Which do you think is worse, smoking or drinking alcohol? Why?

Key to Summary writing

Having read an article on smoking, the writer smoked his last cigarette. He did not smoke for a week and his wife suffered because he had a bad temper and a large appetite. Meanwhile friends offered him cigarettes and were amused to see him produce a packet of sweets from his pocket. When he went to a party, he accepted a cigarette which he was offered by a friend and since then things have returned to normal.

The writer read an article on smoking and smoked his last cigarette. He did not smoke for a week and his wife suffered because of her husband's bad temper and large appetite. Whenever his friends offered him cigarettes, they were amused because he would produce a packet of sweets from his pocket. However, at a party he accepted a cigarette from a friend. Now things have returned to normal.

Lesson 79 By air

Comprehension questions

- 1 When did you use to travel a great deal by air? (When I was a boy.)
- 2 Where did your parents use to live? (In South America.)
- 3 When did you use to fly there? (In the holidays.)
- 4 Who would take charge of you? (A flight attendant would.)
- 5 You never had an unpleasant experience, did you? (No, I didn't.)
- 6 Have you ever felt frightened? (Yes, I have.)
- 7 You're used to travelling by air, aren't you? (Yes, I am.)
- 8 Were you once on a plane that flew back to the airport after taking off?
(Yes, I was.)
- 9 Were you flying low or high over the city? (Low.)
- 10 How quickly were you gaining height? (Slowly.)
- 11 What did the plane suddenly do? (It suddenly turned round and flew
back to the airport.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I used to travel by air a great deal.

S: Did you use to travel by air a great deal?

T: How often...?

S: How often did you use to travel by air?

1 I used to travel by air a great deal. (How often) (How)

2 that was when I was a boy. (When)

3 my parents used to live in South America. (Where) (Who)

4 I used to fly there in the summer holidays. (When) (Where)

5 a flight attendant took charge of me. (Who)

6 I'm used to travelling by air. (What)

7 I felt frightened once. (When)

8 the plane had just taken off. (What...do)

9 it was flying low. (How high)

10 the plane turned round. (What...do)

11 it flew back to the airport. (Where...to)

Pattern drill

1

T: drive the car

S1: John was driving the car this morning.

S2: Was he really? He doesn't usually drive it, does he?

help Mary exercise the dog

prepare lunch talk to the postman

wash the car listen to the radio

clean his shoes read the paper

2

T: talked

S1: Mary hardly talked at all today.

S2: I'm not surprised! She was talking all night.

slept cried quarrelled wrote

worked spoke read sang

3

T: eating -very little -a lot

S1: John has been eating very little recently.

S2: So I noticed. He used to eat a lot.

drinking/going out -very little -a lot

behaving/talking -stupidly -sensibly

dressing/working -carelessly -carefully

going to bed/getting up -late -early

4

T: thief -work in a bank

S1: He used to be a thief, didn't he?

S2: He used to be, but he was working in a bank the last time

I saw him.

pilot -drive a taxi/sell carpets

actress -look after her mother/teach

teacher -play a guitar/work on a farm

flight attendant -have a baby/learn to type

Oral composition

Tell the story

- 1 travel by air -great deal -as a boy
- 2 parents -South America -fly -holidays
- 3 flight attendant -never -unpleasant
- 4 used to -only on one -frightened
- 5 After -off -suddenly -back - airport
- 6 waiting to land -flight attendant told -calm -get off -as soon -touched down
- 7 Later -important person -on board
- 8 police -told -bomb -planted
- 9 searched -nothing -able to -off again

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever had a frightening experience while travelling?
Tell us about it.
- 2 What are the various dangers that threaten air-travellers today?
- 3 Do you think that most children would enjoy the kind of life the writer had as a boy? How might it affect a nervous or shy child, for example?

Key to Summary writing

The plane took off and flew low over the city. When it was slowly gaining height, it suddenly had to return to the airport. Meanwhile the passengers were told to keep calm. After they had disembarked, they learnt that there was a very important person on board. Someone had told the police that a bomb had been planted on the plane, but though it was searched, nothing was found. Five hours later, it took off again.

After having taken off, the plane flew low over the city. Although it was slowly gaining height, it had to return to the airport. During this time, the passengers were told to keep calm until they had disembarked. Later they learnt that there was a very important person on board. Because the police had been told that a bomb had been planted on the plane, it was searched. However, nothing was found, so five hours later it took off again.

Lesson 80 The Crystal Palace

Comprehension questions

- 1 Is the Crystal Palace an ordinary or an extraordinary building? (An extraordinary one.)
- 2 Was it built in the eighteenth or the nineteenth century? (The nineteenth.)
- 3 Where was it built? (In Hyde Park.)
- 4 What was it built for? (For the Great Exhibition of 1851.)
- 5 How was it different from all other buildings in the world? (It was made of iron and glass.)
- 6 Were there many other buildings as big as the Crystal Palace? (No, there weren't.)
- 7 Who came to see it? (A lot of people from many countries did.)
- 8 What was sent to the exhibition from abroad? (A great many goods were.)
- 9 What else was on display? (A great deal of machinery was.)
- 10 What was the most wonderful piece of machinery on show? (Nasmyth's steam hammer was.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the Crystal Palace was built in the nineteenth century.

S: Was the Crystal Palace built in the nineteenth century?

T: When ...?

When was the Crystal Palace built?

- 1 the Crystal Palace was built in the nineteenth century. (When) (What)
- 2 it was built in Hyde Park. (Where)
- 3 it was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851. (Why) (What)
- 4 it was different from all other buildings in the world. (What) (How)
- 5 it was made of iron and glass. (What)
- 6 a lot of people came to see it. (How many)
- 7 they came from many countries. (Where)
- 8 a great many goods were sent to the exhibition. (How many)
- 9 they came from various parts of the world. (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: sweet oranges -Spanish

S1: These oranges aren't sweet enough.

S2: Get some Spanish oranges. They'd be much sweeter.

hard brushes -nylon

smart tie -silk

strong bag -leather

good watch -Swiss

warm socks -woollen

fast car -sports

cheap toys -plastic

big car -American

2

T: dirt on the floor

S1: Was there much dirt on the floor?

S2: No, it wasn't any dirtier than usual.

noise in the classroom/at the market

mist on the hills/in the valley

wind on the island/by the sea

clouds in the sky/over the mountains

3

T: attractive

S1: She's the most attractive person I've ever met.

S2: She's not as attractive as you are!

interesting wonderful

delightful unpleasant

hard-working impatient

understanding unfriendly

4

T: drive -quickly

S1: He drove as quickly as he could.

S2: Yes, he couldn't have driven any more quickly.

stay/wait -long play/drive -well

walk/go -far talk/speak -loudly

write/read -fast speak/sing -clearly

work/fight -hard give -generously

Tell the story

- 1 extraordinary building -19th century -in Hyde Park -Exhibition of 1851
- 2 different -all other -iron and glass
- 3 one of the biggest -people from -to see
- 4 many goods -sent -from various parts
- 5 machinery on display -steam hammer
- 6 steam boats -thousands -from Europe
- 7 On arriving -taken to -by train
- 8 six million -profits -used to build
- 9 moved to -remained -burnt -1936

Topics for discussion

- 1 Tell us about an exhibition you have visited recently.
- 2 Describe the most wonderful building you have seen.
Why and when was it built?
- 3 Do you think international exhibitions serve an important purpose?
In what way are they useful?

Key to Summary writing

The Crystal Palace, which was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851, was different from other buildings because it was made of iron and glass. Goods from various parts of the world were on display as well as a great deal of machinery. So many visitors came by boat and train that it was possible to build colleges and museums from the profits. After the exhibition, the Crystal Palace was moved to South London, where it remained until it was burnt down in 1936.

The Crystal palace was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851. Made of iron and glass, it was different from other buildings. There were not only goods from various parts of the world on display but there was a great deal of machinery as well. This attracted thousands of visitors who travelled by boat and train. Later, colleges and museums were built from the profits. The Crystal Palace was moved to South London and it remained there until 1936 when it was burnt down.

Lesson 81 Escape

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who had killed the guard? (The prisoner of war had.)
- 2 Where did he drag the guard's body? (Into the bushes.)
- 3 Was it dark? (Yes, it was.)
- 4 Did the prisoner change his clothes? (Yes, he did.)
- 5 Whose clothes did he change into? (The guard's.)
- 6 What was he now wearing? (A blue uniform.)
- 7 Did he have a rifle? (Yes, he did.)
- 8 Where did he march? (Up and down in front of the camp.)
- 9 What could he hear inside the camp? (Shouting.)
- 10 Why were men running about inside? (They had just discovered that a prisoner had escaped.)
- 11 What kind of car stopped just then at the camp gates? (A large black car.)
- 12 How many officers were inside it? (Four.)
- 13 Did they get out? (Yes, they did.)
- 14 What did the prisoner do as they passed? (He stood to attention and saluted.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the prisoner of war escaped from a camp.

S: Did the prisoner of war escape from a camp?

T: Where ...from?

S: Where did the prisoner of war escape from?

1 the prisoner of war escaped from a camp. (Where ...from) (Who)

2 he killed the guard. (Who)

3 he dragged him into the bushes. (Where)

4 he worked rapidly. (How fast)

5 he changed into the dead man's clothes. (What) (Whose) (Why)

6 he was now dressed in a blue uniform. (What) (Who)

7 he put a rifle over his shoulder. (What)

8 he marched boldly up and down in front of the camp. (How) (Where)

9 he could hear shouting in the camp itself. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: hall -five minutes

S1: John said he'd be at the hall at six.

S2: Well, if he's not here in five minutes, we'll have to go inside.

theatre/cinema -half an hour

restaurant/entrance -ten minutes

stadium/exhibition -a quarter of an hour

club/church -fifteen minutes

2

T: library

S1: Mary's just gone into the library.

S2: That's funny! I've just come out of the library and I didn't see her in there.

Classroom restaurant

dining room pub

sitting room station

waiting room bank

3

T: the cake out of the oven -tin

S1: Have you taken the cake out of the oven yet?

S2: Yes, and I've put it in the tin.

some ice/milk from the fridge -jug

the beef/meat out of the fridge -oven

the apples/eggs out of the box -bowl

some fruit/eggs from the basket -box

4

T: jeans -a dress

S1: Isn't she going to change out of those jeans?

S2: Yes, she's going to change into a dress.

shorts -a shirt and blouse/a long dress

overalls -a suit/something cleaner

wet clothes -something dry/pyjamas

old clothes -something new/her new suit

Tell the story

- 1 killed -guard -dragged -bushes
- 2 rapidly -changed -dead man's clothes
- 3 dressed in -rifle -marched up and down
- 4 camp -shouting -lights -men running -had just discovered -escaped
- 5 car -four officers -stopped -gates
- 6 got out -prisoner -as they passed
- 7 driver -towards him -wanted to talk
- 8 prisoner felt sorry -but -sharp blow
- 9 into the car -drove off -as he could

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you know any good 'escape' stories? Tell us one.
- 2 Was the prisoner in the story guilty of 'murder'? Why/Why not?
- 3 Most people say war is terrible and wrong, yet stories and films about fighting and war are usually popular. Why do you think this is so?

Key to Summary writing

After having killed the guard, the prisoner of war dragged him into the bushes and changed into his clothes. Then he put the rifle over his shoulder and marched up and down in front of the camp. A short time afterwards, four officers drove up in a car, so he stood to attention and saluted. When they had gone, the driver came towards him and after he had knocked him out, the prisoner jumped into the car and drove away.

As soon as he had killed the guard and dragged him into the bushes, the prisoner of war changed into his clothes. With a rifle over his shoulder, he was marching up and down in front of the camp when four officers drove up in a car. He stood to attention and saluted. When the driver came towards him, the prisoner knocked him out. Then, jumping into the car, he drove away.

Lesson 82 Monster or fish?

Comprehension questions

- 1 What do fishermen and sailors sometimes claim? (To have seen monsters in the sea.)
- 2 What have people often laughed at? (At stories told by seamen.)
- 3 What is now known? (That many of these monsters are simply strange fish.)
- 4 What happens occasionally? (Unusual creatures are washed to the shore.)
- 5 How often are they caught out at sea? (Rarely.)
- 6 Where was a peculiar fish caught? (Near Madagascar.)
- 7 When was it caught? (Some time ago.)
- 8 How was a small fishing boat carried miles out to sea? (By the powerful fish pulling on the line.)
- 9 What did the fisherman realize? (That this was no ordinary fish.)
- 10 What did he try hard not to do? (Damage it.)
- 11 Where was it eventually brought? (To shore.)
- 12 How long was it found to be? (Over thirteen feet long.)
- 13 What kind of head had it got? (One like a horse.)
- 14 What colour were its eyes? (Blue.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if fishermen tell many stories.

S: Do fishermen tell many stories?

T: What stories ...?

S: What stories do fishermen tell?

1 fishermen tell many stories. (What) (Who)

2 they sometimes claim to have seen monsters in the sea. (What) (Where)

3 people laugh at stories told by seamen. (What) (Why)

4 many of these 'monsters' are simply strange fish. (What)

5 unusual creatures are occasionally washed to the shore. (How often) (What kind)

6 they are rarely caught out at sea. (Where)

7 a peculiar fish was caught some time ago near Madagascar. (Where) (When)

8 it carried a small fishing boat miles out to sea. (How far) (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: warn John

S1: Someone must warn John immediately.

S2: Don't worry. He's already been warned.

find the girl tell the pilot

make the tea sign the letter

examine the body finish the work

light the fire polish the floor

2

T: men -caught

S1: Have the men been caught yet?

S2: One of them was caught yesterday, but the other hasn't been caught yet.

letters -written bodies -examined

messages -received houses -sold

books -published trees -cut down

cars -found plans -drawn up

3

T: that man working

S1: Why isn't that man working?

S2: I don't know. He's supposed to be working.

the children resting/doing their homework

those men digging/mending the road

that boy washing the car/playing football

the plane flying to Paris/stopping in Rome

4

T: finish the job -hours

S1: When will the job be finished?

S2: I've no idea. It should have been finished hours ago.

write/publish the book -months

mend/repair the radio -days

draw up/sign the agreement -weeks

burn/take away the rubbish -days

Tell the story

- 1 Fishermen -sailors -monsters -sea
- 2 people -often laughed -now known -many -at times -sighted -strange fish
- 3 Occasionally -to shore -rarely -at sea
- 4 Some time ago -fish -near Madagascar
- 5 boat -out to sea -fish -pulled -line
- 6 Realizing -fisherman -not to damage
- 7 shore -13 feet -head -skin -tail
- 8 museum -scientist -oarfish -rarely seen alive -live at -600 feet

Topics for discussion

- 1 Do you know any stories about 'monsters' or strange creatures?
Tell us one.
- 2 Why do you think fishermen and sailors are noted for telling strange stories?
- 3 We still know comparatively little about the bottom of the deep oceans.
Why is this? Do you think it is important that we should know more?
Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

A strange fish was caught near Madagascar after having pulled a small fishing boat miles out to sea. Making every effort not to damage the fish, the fisherman brought it to shore. The fish, which was over thirteen feet long, with a head like a horse, was sent to a museum. It is being examined by a scientist, who said that it was an oarfish and that such creatures live at a depth of six hundred feet.

A strange fish was caught near Madagascar. Though it pulled a small fishing boat miles out to sea, the fisherman made every effort not to damage it. On being brought to shore, the fish was found to be over thirteen feet long and to have a head like a horse. Now that it has been sent to a museum, it is being examined by a scientist. It is called an oarfish and lives at a depth of six hundred feet.

Lesson 83 After the elections

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who was defeated in the recent elections? (Mr. Wentworth Lane, the former Prime Minister, was.)
- 2 What's he doing now? (He's retiring from political life.)
- 3 Where has he gone? (Abroad.)
- 4 What's your friend called? (Patrick.)
- 5 What's Mr. Lane's party called? (The Radical Progressive Party.)
- 6 Does Patrick support the party? (No, he doesn't.)
- 7 He's always been a fanatical opponent of it, hasn't he? (Yes, he has.)
- 8 Where did he go after the elections? (To Mr. Lane's house.)
- 9 What did he ask the policeman? (If Mr. Lane lived there.)
- 10 How did the policeman reply? (That the ex-Prime Minister had gone abroad.)
- 11 Did Patrick visit the house again on the following day? (Yes, he did.)
- 12 Was the same policeman on duty? (Yes, he was.)
- 13 What did Patrick ask him? (The same question.)
- 14 Did he receive the same answer? (Yes, he did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if Mr. Lane was Prime Minister.

S: Was Mr. Lane Prime Minister?

T: What ...?

S: What was Mr. Lane?

- 1 Mr. Lane was Prime Minister. (What) (Who)
- 2 he was leader of the Radical Progressive Party. (Which party) (Who)
- 3 he was defeated in the recent elections. (When) (Who)
- 4 he's retiring from political life. (Who)
- 5 he's gone abroad. (Where) (Why) (Who)
- 6 Patrick's always been an opponent of Mr. Lane's party. (How long)(Who)
- 7 he went to Mr. Lane's house after the elections. (Where) (When)(Why)
- 8 a policeman was there on duty. (Why)
- 9 Patrick asked the policeman if Mr. Lane lived there. (What) (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: John -write a letter

S1: John's writing a letter at the moment.

S2: I don't envy him. I hate writing letters.

my sister -make her bed/wash up/cook lunch

my brother -cut the grass/clean the car

the children -take exams/learn new words

Mary -attend a meeting/catch a train

my parents -stay in a hotel/fly to Paris

2

T: stung -by a bee -a wasp

S1: Is it true that he's been stung by a bee?

S2: Not quite. It was a wasp that stung him, not a bee.

bitten -by a mosquito/a horse-fly -an ant

hit-by a car/a taxi/a bus -a bicycle

kicked -by a horse/a donkey -a mule

attacked -by a madman/a dog -a wild bull

3

T: yesterday -visit my grandmother

S1: I tried to phone you yesterday, but you weren't in.

S2: No, I was visiting my grandmother.

last night -stay with friends/work late

on Friday -attend a meeting/play tennis

at two -talk to the boss/meet a friend

at lunchtime -eat out/take a walk

4

T: study -hard -6 months

S1: You really must study hard.

S2: I've been studying hard for the last six months!

take -driving lessons/a rest -8 months

look for -a new job/a new flat -10 days

learn -to swim/to ride/to dance -6 weeks

think about -going abroad/retiring -year

Tell the story

- 1 former -Mr. Lane -defeated -elections
- 2 retiring -political life -abroad
- 3 friend -opponent -Mr. Lane's -Party
- 4 After -Patrick went -house
- 5 asked -policeman -told -abroad
- 6 Following day -again -same policeman -same question -same answer
- 7 day after -again -this time -lost his temper -shouted, 'I told you ...'
- 8 'I know, ' -Patrick, 'but I -say it. '

Topics for discussion

- 1 Why do you suppose that Mr. Lane decided to retire from political life?
- 2 What qualities do you think a person must have to be a good successful politician?
- 3 What is your idea of a 'fanatic'? Why are fanatics usually associated with politics or religion?

Key to Summary writing

After having been defeated in the recent elections, the former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, retired abroad. My friend Patrick, who has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party, went to his house three times and asked the policeman on duty whether it was Mr. Lane's house. When he asked for the third time, the angry policeman told him again of Mr. Lane's defeat and retirement. Patrick said that it was something he loved to hear.

Since being defeated in the recent elections, the former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, has retired abroad. As my friend Patrick has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party, he went to his house three times. Each time he asked the same policeman if it was Mr. Lane's house. The third time he was told again by the angry policeman of Mr. Lane's defeat and retirement, but Patrick said it was something he loved to hear.

Lesson 84 On strike

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who's decided to go on strike? (Busmen have.)
- 2 When are they going to do so? (Next week.)
- 3 When is the strike due to begin? (On Tuesday.)
- 4 Does anyone know how long it will last? (No, they don't.)
- 5 How long have the busmen stated that the strike will continue?
(Until general agreement is reached about pay and working conditions.)
- 6 How long do most people believe it will last? (For at least a week.)
- 7 Who's going to offer 'free rides'? (Owners of private cars are.)
- 8 Who will they offer them to? (To people on their way to work.)
- 9 What will this do? (Relieve pressure on the trains.)
- 10 Who's volunteered to drive buses? (University students have.)
- 11 What kinds of drivers are they? (Expert drivers.)
- 12 What will they have to do before driving any of the buses? (To take a test.)
- 13 When are they going to take it? (In two days' time.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if busmen have decided to go on strike next week.

S: Have busmen decided to go on strike next week?

T: When ...?

S: When have busmen decided to go on strike?

1 busmen have decided to go on strike next week. (When) (Who)

2 the strike will begin on Tuesday. (Which day)

3 most people believe the strike will last for at least a week. (How long)

4 the busmen want more pay. (What)

5 they also want better working conditions. (What else)

6 the strike will continue until agreement is reached. (How long)

7 owners of private cars are going to offer 'free rides'. (What)

8 people will still get to work. (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: away-a month

S1: How long will they be away?

S2: They'll be away for a month.

in Japan/in hospital-about two weeks

by the sea/in the country-a fortnight

at the meeting/in town-two hours

at the seaside/abroad-quite a while

2

T: climb the mountain-three weeks

S1: How long will they take to climb the mountain?

S2: They'll climb it in three weeks.

decorate/paint the house-three days

sail/cross the Atlantic-about a month

reply to/answer the letter-a week

mend/repair the radio-about two days

3

T: see the film

S1: We're going to see the film. Do you want to come?

S2: No thanks. I'll go and see it later.

visit Mary read the notice

see the exhibition call on the Smiths

admire the view talk to the men

speak to the manager look at the pictures

4

T: go into hospital

S1: He's going into hospital some time.

S2: Is he? Let me know when he goes.

set out for-the North Pole/the Arctic

come back from-South America/Europe

return from-his holiday/the country

arrive-in this country/at the airport

Tell the story

- 1 Busmen-strike-next week
- 2 have stated-will continue-until-agreement-about pay and working
- 3 people believe-at least a week
- 4 car owners-free rides-to work
- 5 This-relieve pressure-trains
- 6 students-drive buses-strike lasts
- 7 expert drivers-but-special test
- 8 Even so-difficult-get to work
- 9 public-gratitude-but-too fast

Topics for discussion

- 1 Why do you suppose the 'expert drivers' had to take a special test before being allowed to drive buses?
- 2 Would you like to be a bus or a train driver? Why/Why not?
- 3 Which do you think is more important in a job: good pay or good working conditions? Why?

Key to Summary writing

The busmen's strike, which begins on Tuesday, may last a week. Because of this, car owners have offered to give rides to people going to work. University students, too, have volunteered to drive buses but they will have to pass a special test. Though it will be difficult to get to work, the public is grateful to the students. Only one or two people have objected that the students will drive too fast.

Because of the busmen's strike, which begins on Tuesday and may last a week, car owners have offered to give rides to people going to work. University students who have volunteered to drive buses will have to pass a special test. Despite the fact that it will be difficult to get to work, the public is grateful to the students, except for one or two people who have objected that they will drive too fast.

Lesson 85 Never too old to learn

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where have you just received a letter from? (From my old school.)
- 2 What is your old headmaster's name? (Mr. Stuart Page.)
- 3 When will he be retiring? (Next week.)
- 4 What will he be receiving to mark the occasion? (A present.)
- 5 Who will be sending it? (Pupils of the school will.)
- 6 Where will those who have contributed to the gift sign their names?
(In a large album.)
- 7 Will it be sent to the school or to the headmaster's home?
(To his home.)
- 8 What will you all remember Mr. Page for? (For his patience and understanding.)
- 9 He gave you kindly encouragement, didn't he? (Yes, he did.)
- 10 Did you go willingly to school? (No, we didn't.)
- 11 When is a farewell dinner being held in his honour? (Next Thursday.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if I've just received a letter.

S: Have you just received a letter?

T: What ...?

What have you just received?

- 1 I've just received a letter. (What)
- 2 it was about Mr. Stuart Page, my former headmaster. (What)
- 3 he will be retiring next week. (When)
- 4 his pupils will send him a present. (Who)
- 5 they'll be sending him a present to mark the occasion. (Why) (What) (Who)
- 6 the contributors will sign their names in an album. (Where) (What)
- 7 it will be sent to his home. (Where)
- 8 we shall all remember Mr. Page for his patience and understanding (What)
- 9 he gave us kindly encouragement when we went to school. (What)(When)

Pattern drill

1

T: the library-read those papers

S1: How much longer will he be staying at the library?

S2: He'll have to stay here until he's read those papers.

the hotel-buy/find/rent a flat

school-correct/take/mark the tests

home-find/get/start a new job

2

T: print invitations-wedding

S1: Will you be having invitations printed for the wedding?

S2: Yes, we will. I only hope they'll be printed in time.

check the car/renew your passport-trip

put up decorations/prepare food-dance

make costumes/print programmes-play

3

T: have lunch

S1: We can't visit the Smiths now. They'll be having lunch.

S2: They'll have had lunch by now, surely?

have breakfast pack their bags

have a rest feed the horses/dogs

wash up read the papers

do the shopping put the children to bed

4

T: working

S1: Shall we visit the Smiths tonight, or will they still be working?

S2: If they are, they'll have been working the whole day!

painting packing revising

decorating unpacking practising

cleaning studying resting

Tell the story

- 1 letter-former headmaster-next week
- 2 Pupils-old and new-present-to mark
- 3 those who-sign-album-will be sent
- 4 shall all remember-patience and-encouragement-gave us when
- 5 many former pupils-farewell dinner-his honour-next Thursday
- 6 day before-teaching-forty years
- 7 retired-devote-to gardening
- 8 new hobby-but-never too old

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you any hobbies? What are they? Why do you enjoy them?
- 2 Do you think most people look forward to retirement? Why/Why not?
- 3 Do you agree with Mr. Page that 'one is never too old to learn'? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

Now that my former headmaster, Mr. Page, is retiring, pupils of the school will be sending him a gift and an album with the signatures of all those who have contributed. Many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in his honour. After having completed forty years as a teacher, Mr. Page will devote himself to gardening, which will be a new hobby for him, but one is never too old to learn.

After twenty-eight years as headmaster, Mr. Page is retiring. Pupils of the school will not only be sending him a gift, but also an album with their signatures. Many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in honour of a man who has completed forty years as a teacher. Now he will devote himself to gardening. Though it will be a new hobby for him, this does not matter because one is never too old to learn.

Lesson 86 Out of control

Comprehension questions

- 1 Was the man in a boat or a car? (In a boat.)
- 2 What kind of boat was it? (A speedboat.)
- 3 When did the steering wheel come away in his hand?
(When he tried to swing the boat round.)
- 4 What had his companion been doing for the last fifteen minutes? (Water skiing.)
- 5 He waved desperately to him, didn't he? (Yes, he did.)
- 6 Did they realize what was happening? (No, they didn't.)
- 7 They were thrown violently into the sea, weren't they?
(Yes, they were.)
- 8 What had the speedboat struck? (A buoy.)
- 9 What did it continue to do? (To move very quickly across the water.)
- 10 Was it moving in a straight line or a circle? (In a circle.)
- 11 How did the men feel when they saw this? (Dismayed.)
- 12 What had they just begun to do?
(They had just begun to swim towards the shore.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if the man tried to swing the speedboat round.

S: Did the man try to swing the speedboat round?

T: What ...do?

S: What did the man try to do?

- 1 the man tried to swing the speedboat round. (What ...do)
- 2 the steering wheel came away in his hands as he did so. (When)
- 3 he waved desperately to his companion. (Who ...to) (Why) (When)
- 4 he was water skiing. (What ...doing)
- 5 he had been water skiing for the last fifteen minutes. (How long) (Who)
- 6 both men were thrown violently into the sea. (How) (When) (Who)
- 7 they had hardly had time to realize what was happening. (How much time)
- 8 the boat had struck a buoy. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: post the letter

S1: Did he post the letter when you asked him to?

S2: He'd already posted it.

pay the bill burn the papers

mend the boat sell the eggs

cut the grass feed the horses

sign the paper clean the windows

2

T: use-the iron-put away

S1: Can I use the iron after you, please?

S2: I'm sorry. I put it away after I'd used it.

read/look at-the paper-throw away

study/examine-the note-tear up

talk to/speak to-the boy-send home

look at/see-the photos-give to Mary

3

T: see a bad film

S1: Why did you see such a bad film?

S2: I hadn't seen it before, so I didn't know it was bad.

read a dull book make a boring journey

speak to a rude man drive a dangerous car

order bad wine take a difficult exam

use thick oil play terrible music

4

T: hot-running

S1: Why was he so hot when he got home?

S2: He'd been running.

tired-working angry-quarrelling

hungry-swimming happy-celebrating

rude-drinking dirty-gardening

nervous-fighting miserable-crying

Tell the story

- 1 man tried-boat round-steering wheel-away in his hands
- 2 waved-companion, who-skiing
- 3 hardly had time-realize-thrown-sea
- 4 boat-struck a buoy-continued to move
- 5 Both-begun-towards the shore-dismay-boat-in a circle
- 6 tremendous speed-past them
- 7 out of danger-again-a circle
- 8 slowed down-petrol-used up-drift

Topics for discussion

- 1 What do you enjoy doing most when you go to the seaside?
- 2 What kind of boat would you like to own? Give reasons for your choice.
- 3 Which do you consider the greater achievement: winning a gold medal in a sailing event in the Olympic Games or sailing round the world single-handed? Why?

Key to Summary writing

The moment the speedboat struck the buoy, both men were thrown into the water. As it moved off very quickly across the water, the men began to swim towards the shore. Turning in a circle, the speedboat came straight towards them. After it had just missed them, they swam until they were out of danger. When the boat returned it had lost speed. Soon all the petrol was used up and it floated across the water.

Because the speedboat had struck a buoy, both men were thrown into the water. It moved off very quickly and, while the men were swimming towards the shore, it turned in a circle, came straight towards them and only just missed them. They had no sooner swum out of danger than the boat returned. This time, however, it had lost speed because nearly all the petrol had been used up and it floated across the water.

Lesson 87 A perfect alibi

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who was asking the man questions? (The inspector was.)
- 2 Why was he asking questions? (There had been a murder.)
- 3 Where was the man going at the time? (He was travelling to London.)
- 4 Which train did he say he was travelling on? (The 8 o'clock train to London.)
- 5 What did the inspector ask him then? ('Do you always catch such an early train?')
- 6 What time did the man say he had to be at work? (At 10.)
- 7 What would the man's employer do? (He would confirm the man was there on time.)
- 8 Would a later train get the man to work on time? (Yes, it would.)
- 9 Did he say he always caught a later train? (No, he didn't.)
- 10 What time did he say he arrived at the station? (At ten to eight.)
- 11 What did he buy? (A paper.)
- 12 What did he do then? (He waited for the train.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if the inspector was interviewing a man.

S: Was the inspector interviewing a man?

T: Who ...?

S: Who was the inspector interviewing?

- 1 the inspector was interviewing a man. (Who) (Why)
- 2 the man said he was travelling to London. (What) (Where) (Who)
- 3 he was on the train. (Where)
- 4 he always caught the early train. (When) (Which train) (Why)
- 5 he had to be at work at 10 o'clock. (At what time) (Where)
- 6 his employer would confirm that he was there on time. (What) (Who)
- 7 a later train would get him to work on time. (When)
- 8 he was at the station at 7. 50. (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: broke that plate

S1: I wonder who broke that plate.

S2: John told me he'd broken it.

tore the curtain drew up the plan

posted the card sent the message

invited the Smiths cut the grass

wrote this note saw the ghost

2

T: he'll be coming

S1: Have you asked him when he'll be coming?

S2: Yes, he said he'd be coming tomorrow.

she'll be singing he'll be arriving

they'll be sailing she'll be teaching

they'll be playing she'll be leaving

he'll be going they'll be flying

3

T: visit him

S1: When will you visit him?

S2: He hasn't asked me to visit him yet!

teach them marry him

go out with him help her wash up

sing for her perform for them

photograph them play tennis with him

4

T: sell this car

S1: I think I'll have to sell this car.

S2: I suggested you should sell it weeks ago!

phone John help those people

apply for the job take the exam

apologize to Mary learn Chinese

enter for the race see the exhibition

Tell the story

- 1 man said-8 o'clock train-London-at the time-murder
- 2 said-always caught-as he had to be-10 o'clock.
- 3 agreed-later train-on time
- 4 in reply to-question-said-arrived-ten to eight-hadn't noticed-unusual
- 5 inspector suggested-not-truth
- 6 morning of-8 o'clock train-didn't run-broke down-off the line

Topics for discussion

- 1 Supposing the man was not the murderer, what other reasons might he have had for lying to the inspector?
- 2 Which is your favourite detective story? Why do you like it?
- 3 Why do you think stories of crime and detection are generally so popular?

Key to Summary writing

At the time of the murder, the man claimed that he had been travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London and had arrived at work on time. When the inspector asked if a later train would get him to work on time, the man agreed it would but said that he always travelled early. The inspector suggested that he was lying because, that morning, the 8 o'clock train broke down, so the man must have caught the 8. 25.

When the murder was committed, the man claimed that he was travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London. He said that he arrived at work on time. Then the inspector asked if a later train would get him to work on time. Though the man agreed it would, he said he always travelled early. In reply, the inspector suggested he was lying, as the 8 o'clock train broke down that morning and therefore the man must have caught the 8. 25.

Lesson 88 trapped in a mine

Comprehension questions

- 1 How many men have been trapped in a mine? (Six.)
- 2 How long have they been there? (For seventeen hours.)
- 3 What may happen if they aren't brought to the surface soon? (They may lose their lives.)
- 4 Are rescue operations proving easy or difficult?(Difficult.)
- 5 Why aren't explosives being used? (Because vibrations would cause the roof to collapse.)
- 6 Are rescue workers drilling a hole? (Yes, they are.)
- 7 On which side of the mine are they drilling it? (On the north side of the mine.)
- 8 How do they intend to bring the men up? (In a special capsule.)
- 9 What did they discover beneath the soil? (A hard layer of rock.)
- 10 What would they have done if it hadn't been there? (They would have completed the job in a few hours.)
- 11 How long have they been drilling? (For sixteen hours.)
- 12 How far do they still have to go? (A long way.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if six men have been trapped in a mine.

S: Have six men been trapped in a mine?

T: How many ...?

S: How many men have been trapped in a mine?

1 six men have been trapped in a mine. (How many) (Where)

2 they've been there for seventeen hours. (How long) (Where)

3 rescue operations are proving difficult. (What) (Why)

4 the men will lose their lives. (Who)

5 the roof will collapse. (What)

6 rescue workers are drilling a hole. (What)

7 they're drilling on the north side. (Where)

8 they'll bring the men up in a special capsule. (How) (What kind) (Who)

9 there's a hard layer of rock beneath the soil. (What) (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: catch the train-hurry

S1: I can't possibly catch the train now!

S2: You might catch it-if you hurry!

pass the exam-work hard/study harder

sell the car-mend it/advertise it

win the race-keep calm/make an effort

finish in time-get help/work all night

2

T: catch the train-pack

S1: He won't catch the train if he doesn't pack soon!

S2: He won't catch it now, even if he's already packed!

be in time-leave/call a taxi/start

get the job-apply/write/pass the exam

find his case-tell the police/advertise

3

T: go with him-ask

S1: Will you go with him?

S2: I'd go with him if he asked me to-but I don't think he will!

clean his room/mend his coat-ask

enter for the race/rest-advise

join his team/go to his party-invite

work late/go down the mine-tell

4

T: failed so badly-worked harder

S1: He shouldn't have failed so badly.

S2: He wouldn't have failed so badly if he'd worked harder.

lost his way-had a map/followed my plan

died-gone into hospital/seen a doctor

been late-taken a taxi/known the way

retired-had a good job/liked his work

Tell the story

- 1 six men-trapped-seventeen hours
- 2 rescue operations-difficult
- 3 if explosives-roof-collapse
- 4 workers-drilling-north side
- 5 intend-bring men up-special capsule
- 6 hard layer of rock-drilling-six hours
- 7 microphone-enabled-keep in touch
- 8 running out of-confident-out soon
- 9 If they knew-difficult-lose heart

Topics for discussion

- 1 If you were trapped underground, could you remain cheerful? What would you do?
- 2 Coal-mining is dangerous work. What other kind of work involves similar risks?
- 3 One day all the natural supplies of coal will be used up. What will happen in countries which at present depend largely on coal for industry, heating, etc.?

Key to Summary writing

Six men who have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours may lose their lives because rescue operations are proving difficult. Since explosives might cause the roof of the mine to collapse, rescue workers are drilling a hole through hard rock, but progress is slow. Two hours ago, a microphone was lowered into the mine and the men have been in touch with their relatives. They are running short of food and drink but they are in good spirits.

Six men have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours and may lose their lives. Rescue operations are proving difficult as explosives might cause the roof of the mine to collapse. Because of this, rescue workers are drilling a hole through hard rock, yet progress is slow. Now that a microphone has been lowered into the mine, the men are in touch with their relatives. Though they are running short of food and drink, they are in good spirits.

Lesson 89 A slip of the tongue

Comprehension questions

- 1 What will people do anything for? (For a free show.)
- 2 Do they care if it's a bad one? (No, they don't.)
- 3 Did news get round about a comedy show at our local cinema? (Yes, it did.)
- 4 Who was it presented by? (By the P. and U. Bird Seed Company.)
- 5 We all rushed to see it, didn't we? (Yes, we did.)
- 6 How long did we have to queue to get in? (For hours.)
- 7 How many people were present? (Several hundred.)
- 8 What was the show like? (Very dull.)
- 9 It wasn't very good, was it? (No, it wasn't.)
- 10 Did some people fail to get in? (Yes, they did.)
- 11 Why needn't they have felt disappointed? (Many of the artistes who should have come did not appear.)
- 12 Who spoke at the beginning of the programme? (The advertiser did.)
- 13 Was he nervous? (Yes, he was.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if people like to see a free show.

S: Do people like to see a free show?

T: What...?

S: What do people like to see?

1 people like to see a free show. (What)

2 the P. & U. Bird Seed Company presented a comedy show. (What kind) (Who)

3 it was presented at a cinema. (Where)

4 the news got round. (What)

5 we all rushed to see it. (What)

6 we had to queue to get in. (Why)

7 we queued for hours. (How long) (Who)

8 several hundred people were present. (How many)

9 the show was very dull. (What...like)

10 the advertiser stood awkwardly before the microphone. (How) (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: wash the dishes

S1: She needn't have washed the dishes.

S2: She had to wash them or her husband would have been furious with her.

buy a paper make the tea

make the beds go shopping

visit Mary tidy the room

cook lunch pay the bill

feed the dogs help us

wait for us post the card

2

T: type the letters

S1: Didn't Mary type the letters yesterday?

S2: They'd already been typed, so she didn't have to type them.

buy the food prepare the speech

clean the car sell the tickets

cook lunch make the decision

mend the light sign the contract

3

T: read-your eyes

S1: You mustn't read so much or you'll strain your eyes.

S2: I've got to do a lot of reading. It's part of my job.

talk/sing/shout -your voice

climb/walk/run about-your heart

carry/bend over/lift-your back

4

T: arrived-delayed

S1: I can't understand it. He ought to have arrived by now.

S2: He must have been delayed.

got here/been here-kept at the office

come back/returned-caught by the police

left home/set out--taken ill

done the job/finished-arrested

Tell the story

- 1 People will do-to see-free
- 2 news-comedy show-Seed Company-all rushed-see it
- 3 queue-several hundred people
- 4 one of the dullest--ever seen
- 5 Those who failed-needn't-disappointed
- 6 only funny things-advertiser
- 7 As soon as-burst out laughing
- 8 should have said-but-actually-'Poo and Ee Seed Bird-Good ladies'

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe an occasion when you or someone you know has made a 'slip of the tongue'.
- 2 What is the dullest book/play/film you know? Can you suggest a way of improving it?
- 3 There is a saying, 'The best things in life are free.' Do you agree? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The local cinema was packed because the P&U Bird Seed Company was presenting a free comedy show. As many of the artistes who should have appeared failed to turn up, the show was very dull. The funniest thing we heard came at the beginning from the advertiser who introduced the programme saying, 'This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlemen!'

The local cinema was packed. The P&U Bird Seed Company was presenting a free comedy show but many of the artistes who should have appeared failed to turn up. Because of this, the show was very dull. The funniest thing we heard came at the beginning from the advertiser who introduced the programme saying, 'This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlemen!'

Lesson 90 What's for supper?

Comprehension questions

- 1 What has always been a favourite dish in Britain? (Fish and chips.)
- 2 Why has fish become more and more expensive? (Because the oceans have been overfished.)
- 3 What's terrifying the divers? (Giant fish are.)
- 4 Is this a surprise? (Yes, it is.)
- 5 What do divers do on oil rigs? (Carry out repairs.)
- 6 Where do they often work? (A hundred feet under water.)
- 7 What do they use to protect them? (Special cages.)
- 8 Are the fish killer whales? (No, they aren't.)
- 9 What type of fish are they? (Favourite eating varieties.)
- 10 How big are the fish? (Sometimes as much as twelve feet long.)
- 11 Is the water round the oil pipes warm or cold? (Warm.)
- 12 Is there plenty of food? (Yes, there is.)

Asking questions: Ask me if ...

T: Ask me if fish and chips has always been a favourite dish in Britain.

S: Has fish and chips always been a favourite dish in Britain?

T: What...?

S: What has always been a favourite dish in Britain?

1 fish and chips has always been a favourite dish in Britain.

(What)(Where)

2 fish has become more expensive. (Why)

3 divers have to repair oil rigs. (Who) (What)

4 they often have to work in darkness. (Where)

5 giant fish often bump into them. (What)

6 they have special cages to protect them. (What)

7 the fish are eating varieties. (What kinds offish)

8 they grow to unnatural sizes. (How large)

9 the water is warm round the oil pipes. (Where)

10 food is supplied by the crews. (What)

Pattern drill

1

T: a pen

S1: I need a pen. Have you got one to spare?

S2: I'm sorry. I've only got one and I need it myself!

a stamp a clock a radio a cup

a pencil a knife a camera a bag

2

T: bread or toast-for tea

S1: Would you like bread or toast for tea?

S2: I'll have toast, if I may.

eggs or fish-for dinner/for supper

cake or biscuits-for tea/with your tea

salad or rice-with your meat/for lunch

jam or honey-with your toast/for tea

3

T: irritable-a long walk

S1: I feel very irritable.

S2: Have a long walk and you'll feel better.

dirty-a wash/bath/shower/swim

cold-a hot bath/run round the garden

tired-a rest/sleep/drink and a rest

hot-a swim/shower/rest/cool drink

4

T: cracked cup-mend

S1: That cup is cracked. I'll have to have it mended.

S2: Don't worry. I'll get it mended for you.

dirty car-wash

broken radio-repair

long grass-cut

old tree-cut down

Tell the story

- 1 Fish and chips-dish-Britain
- 2 oceans-overfished-fish-expensive
- 3 surprise-giant fish-divers-repair-oil rigs
- 4 divers-darkness-100 feet-frightened-fish
- 5 fish-sharks-killer whales-eating varieties
- 6 cod-unnatural sizes-sometimes-12 feet
- 7 warm water-oil pipes
- 8 plentiful food-crew
- 9 absence-boats

Topics for discussion

- 1 What is your favourite dish? How is it prepared?
- 2 Tell us what you think life is like on an oil rig.
- 3 Describe the most frightening experience you have ever had.

Key to Summary writing

Divers working on North Sea oil rigs are often terrified by giant fish that bump into them when they are working in deep water. These fish are not sharks or whales. On the contrary, they are favourite eating varieties that grow to unnatural sizes. Three factors have caused this to happen: the first is the warmth from oil-pipes; the second is the supply of plentiful food; the third is the absence of fishing round the rigs.

Divers who work on the North Sea oil rigs have been terrified out of their wits by giant fish bumping into them while they work in deep water. The fish are not sharks or whales, but favourite eating varieties like cod and skate which have grown to unnatural sizes. Three factors have caused this to happen: the warmth from the hot oil-pipes, the plentiful food thrown from the rigs and the absence of fishing around the rigs.

Lesson 91 Three men in a basket

Comprehension questions

- 1 Who noticed the balloon? (A pilot did.)
- 2 Where did it seem to be making for? (For a Royal Air Force Station.)
- 3 Did the pilot inform the station at once? (Yes, he did.)
- 4 Could anyone explain the mystery? (No, they couldn't.)
- 5 Who was very angry at the news? (The officer at the control tower was.)
- 6 Why was he so angry? (Because balloons can be a great danger to aircraft.)
- 7 What might someone be doing? (Spying on the station.)
- 8 What was the pilot ordered to do? (To keep track of the balloon.)
- 9 How long did he circle the balloon? (For some time.)
- 10 Where was the basket? (Under the balloon.)
- 11 How many men were there in the basket? (Three.)
- 12 What was one of them holding? (A pair of binoculars.)
- 13 What did the pilot see one of the men do then? (Take some photographs.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if a pilot noticed a balloon.

S: Did a pilot notice a balloon?

T: What...?

S: What did a pilot notice?

1 a pilot noticed a balloon. (What) (Who)

2 there was a Royal Air Force Station nearby. (Where) (What)

3 the balloon was making for it. (What)

4 the pilot informed the station. (Who)

5 the officer in the control tower heard the news. (What) (Who)

6 he was angry at the news. (Why)

7 balloons can be a danger to aircraft. (What)

8 the pilot was ordered to keep track of the object. (What...do) (Who)

9 there were three men in the basket. (How many) (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: put these towels-in the cupboard

S1: Where shall I put these towels?

S2: You can put them in the cupboard.

dry/hang the wet clothes-in the sun

write/read the report-in the library

park/leave the car-in that car park

buy/get the medicine-from the chemist's

2

T: go and see Mary

S1: Can you go and see Mary soon?

S2: I may be able to go and see her tomorrow.

come to see us have lunch with us

see the doctor take me to the zoo

wash my shirt visit your sister

mend this strap finish that report

3

T: jump over the stream-wide

S1: Why didn't you jump over the stream?

S2: I couldn't jump over it. It was too wide.

carry the case/box-heavy

buy the flat/boat-expensive

move the table/cupboard-big

drink your soup/coffee-hot

4

T: the door was locked-open

S1: The door was locked, wasn't it?

S2: Yes, but I managed to open it in the end.

he refused to agree-persuade/convince

the horse ran away-catch/stop

the box was very heavy-move/lift

the river was very wide-swim/get across

Tell the story

- 1 pilot noticed-balloon-making for-R. A. F. Station-and informed
- 2 officer in the-angry when-danger to
- 3 someone-spying-ordered pilot to
- 4 pilot managed to-for some time
- 5 three men-basket-one-binoculars
- 6 over the station-saw one-photographs
- 7 Soon-descend-near an airfield
- 8 police-couldn't arrest-M. P. -C. O.
- 9 later-one half-didn't know what

Topics for discussion

- 1 Was it likely that anyone was spying from the balloon? Why/Why not?
- 2 Imagine you were one of the Members of Parliament in the story. What reasons did you give the C. O. to persuade him to take you over the station in a balloon?
- 3 Apart from balloons, what else can be a danger to aircraft? In what way?

Key to Summary writing

While circling the balloon, the pilot saw three men in the basket, one of whom was holding a pair of binoculars. When it flew over the station, one of the men took photographs. Then it landed near an airfield, but the police could not arrest anyone because the basket contained two Members of Parliament and the Commanding Officer of the station. Afterwards the Commanding Officer explained that one half of the station did not know what the other half was doing.

The pilot circled the balloon, under which there was a basket containing three men, one of whom was holding a pair of binoculars. Before landing near an airfield, it flew over the station and someone took photographs. As two of the men were Members of Parliament and the other was the Commanding Officer, the police could not arrest anyone. The mystery was explained when the Commanding Officer admitted (said) that one half of the station did not know what the other half was doing.

Lesson 92 Asking for trouble

Comprehension questions

- 1 What time was it when you returned home? (About two in the morning.)
- 2 How did you try to wake up your wife? (By ringing the doorbell.)
- 3 Did she wake up, or was she fast asleep? (She was fast asleep.)
- 4 Where did you get a ladder from? (From the shed in the garden.)
- 5 Where did you put it? (Against the wall.)
- 6 What did you begin doing then? (Climbing towards the bedroom window.)
- 7 What did you hear when you were almost there? (A sarcastic voice.)
- 8 What did the voice say? ('I don't think the windows need cleaning at this time of the night.')
- 9 You looked down, didn't you? (Yes, I did.)
- 10 What nearly happened when you saw a policeman? (I nearly fell off the ladder.)
- 11 What did you say to him? ('I enjoy cleaning windows at night. ')
- 12 Did you immediately regret answering the way you did? (Yes, I did.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if I returned home late.

S: Did you return home late?

T: When...?

S: When did you return home?

1 I returned home late. (When) (Who)

2 it was about two in the morning. (What time)

3 I tried to wake my wife by ringing the doorbell. (How) (Who) (When)

4 she was fast asleep. (Who)

5 I got a ladder. (What)

6 I got it from the garden shed. (Where)

7 I put it against the wall. (Where)

8 I began climbing towards the bedroom window. (Which) (Why)

9 I'd almost got to the top. (How far)

10 I heard a voice. (What)

11 it was a policeman. (Who)

Pattern drill

1

T: eating between meals

S1: Eating between meals is bad for you.

S2: But I like eating between meals!

working all night/staying up late

swimming after a meal/doing heavy work

studying at night/sleeping all day

going to bed late/getting up late

2

T: check these figures

S1: Would you mind checking these figures?

S2: It's no use asking me to check your figures. I'm busy checking my OWN!

do my homework cook our lunch

prepare my speech design our house

mend my radio plan our holiday

type these letters look after the children

3

T: get into the car-drive

S1: Did you see him getting into the car?

S2: I didn't see him getting into the car, but I saw him driving it.

open the window-climb towards/get through

steal the money-count/hide/spend

enter the house-wait outside/come out of

shoot the man-hit/knock out/speak to

4

T: give speeches

S1: You must be used to giving speeches now!

S2: I am, but I always look forward to giving another one!

win elections catch spies

see 'monsters' meet film stars

visit museums solve problems

receive presents break world records

Tell the story

- 1 about 2 a. m. -returned home
- 2 tried to wake-fast asleep-ladder-put it against-began climbing
- 3 almost there-voice--policeman
- 4 'don't think-need cleaning-night'
- 5 told him-enjoyed-at night
- 6 asked me-with him-station
- 7 prefer to stay-forgotten-key
- 8 shouting woke-wife, who-window-just as-started to climb

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever said something that you regretted immediately? Why did you regret it?
- 2 What would you do if you had forgotten your house key late at night?
- 3 What would you do if you saw someone trying to enter the window of a house late at night? Would you call the police? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

The writer returned home at about two in the morning and rang the doorbell. Having failed to wake up his wife, he put a ladder against the wall and began climbing towards the bedroom window. Suddenly a policeman called out, but the writer answered him rudely. He told him he had forgotten his key. The shouting woke his wife. She opened the window just as the policeman had started climbing the ladder after him.

On arriving home at about two in the morning, the writer rang the doorbell but failed to wake up his wife. After having put a ladder against the wall, he was climbing towards the bedroom window when a policeman called out. Answering him rudely, the writer told him he had forgotten his key. The shouting woke his wife, who opened the window at the moment when the policeman started climbing the ladder after him.

Lesson 93 A noble gift

Comprehension questions

- 1 Which is one of the most famous monuments in the world?
(The Statue of Liberty.)
- 2 When was it presented to the United States of America?
(In the 19th century.)
- 3 Who was it presented by? (By the people of France.)
- 4 How long did the statue take to complete? (Ten years.)
- 5 Who was it designed by? (By Auguste Bartholdi.)
- 6 How was the actual figure supported? (By a metal framework.)
- 7 What was the figure made of? (Copper.)
- 8 Who constructed the metal framework? (Eiffel.)
- 9 What had to be found before the statue could be transported to the States? (A site.)
- 10 What had to be built? (A pedestal.)
- 11 What site was chosen?
(An island at the entrance of New York Harbour.)
- 12 Where was the statue first erected? (In Paris.)
- 13 How tall was it? (151 feet.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if the Statue of Liberty is a world-famous monument.

S: Is the Statue of Liberty a world-famous monument?

T: How famous...?

S: How famous is the Statue of Liberty?

1 the Statue of Liberty is a world-famous monument. (How famous) (What)

2 it was presented to the U. S. A. in the nineteenth century. (When) (What)

3 it was given by the French. (Who)

4 it was designed by Bartholdi. (Who)

5 he was a sculptor. (Who) (What)

6 it took ten years to complete. (How long)

- 7 the figure was made of copper. (What)
- 8 it was supported by a metal framework. (How) (What)
- 9 the frame was constructed by Eiffel. (Who)
- 10 the statue was 151 feet tall. (How tall)
- 11 it was erected in 1884. (When)

Pattern drill

1

T: send my case-to your home

S1: Where will they be sending my case?

S2: It'll be sent to your home.

test/locate the oil rig-in the North Sea

give/hold the lecture-in the town hall

build/construct the stadium-at Wembley

show/make the film-at the studios

2

T: this camera

S1: I can't get this camera to work.

It must be broken.

S2: Then it'll have to be repaired.

this clock this machine

these lights these scissors

this television this CD-player

these loudspeakers these microphones

3

T: the luggage sent-weighed

S1: Why can't the luggage be sent now?

S2: It must be weighed before it can be sent.

the men/workers admitted-searched

the meat/vegetables cooked-cut up

the house/rooms occupied-cleaned

the notice/posters put up-corrected

4

T: the luggage-weighed-sent

S1: What happened to the luggage?

S2: It had to be weighed before it could be sent.

the men/workers-searched-admitted the

meat/vegetables-cut up-cooked

the house/rooms-cleaned-occupied the

notice/posters-corrected-put up

Tell the story

1 Statue of Liberty-to the U. S. A -19th century-by the people of France

2 designed-Bartholdi-ten years to

3 figure-copper supported by-metal framework-especially-by Eiffel

4 before-to the U. S. A. -site-pedestal

5 island-entrance-N. Y. Harbour

6 1884-statue-151 feet-in Paris

7 pieces-sent to-together again-1886

8 since-symbol of liberty for-millions

Topics for discussion

1 Why do you think the island site was chosen? Was it a good one?
Why/Why not?

2 Describe a famous statue in your country and say what you know of its history.

3 Why do you think the French presented the statue to America? Of what value is such a gift between nations?

Key to Summary writing

The Statue of Liberty, which was presented to the United States of America by the French people in the 19th century, was designed by Bartholdi and built on a metal frame constructed by Eiffel. The site chosen for it was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour, where a pedestal had to be built. The statue was erected in Paris in 1884 and re-erected two years later in America. It was officially presented in October, 1886.

The Statue of Liberty was presented to the United States of America by the French people in the 19th century. Though designed by Bartholdi, it was built on a metal frame constructed by Eiffel. The site chosen for it was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour and a pedestal had to be built. The statue was first erected in Paris in 1884, but it was re-erected two years later in America and officially presented in October, 1886.

Lesson 94 Future champions

Comprehension questions

- 1 What have experiments proved? (That children can be instructed in swimming at a very early age.)
- 2 Where is there a special swimming pool? (In Los Angeles.)
- 3 What do children learn to do there? (To hold their breath under water.)
- 4 They become expert at this, don't they? (Yes, they do.)
- 5 Must they be able to walk first? (No, they needn't.)
- 6 Are some of them very young? (Yes, they are.)
- 7 Do they appear to be reluctant to enter the water? (No, they don't.)
- 8 Can they pick up weights from the floor of the pool? (Yes, they can.)
- 9 Which game is very popular with them? (The underwater tricycle race.)
- 10 Where are the tricycles lined up? (On the floor of the pool.)
- 11 How deep is the water? (Seven feet.)
- 12 Who do the children compete against? (Against each other.)
- 13 What must they reach? (The other end of the pool.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if children can be taught to swim at a very early age.

S: Can children be taught to swim at a very early age?

T: At what age ...?

S: At what age can children be taught to swim?

1 children can be taught to swim at a very early age. (At what age)
(When)

2 this has been proved by experiments. (How)

3 there is a special swimming pool in Los Angeles. (Where) (What)

4 children become expert. (How good)

5 they hold their breath under water. (Where)

6 they can do it before they can walk. (What)

7 it's not long before they can swim. (How long)

8 they can pick up weights. (What)

9 the weights are on the floor. (Where)

10 the tricycle race is popular. (Which)

11 it's an underwater race. (What kind)

Pattern drill

1

T: uneasy about -the weather

S1: What are you so uneasy about?

S2: I'm uneasy about the weather.

afraid of -the ghost/sleeping alone

surprised at -her success/her winning

doubtful about -the result/succeeding

sad about -his death/his leaving us

2

T: he burnt the letter -right

S1: He burnt the letter, didn't he?

S2: Yes, but he was right to burn the letter.

she told a lie/sold the car -wrong

you arrived late/missed the play -sorry

she lent him money/went home -reluctant

they saw her go/said goodbye -sad

3

T: criticize -be late

S1: What did they criticize him for?

S2: They criticized him for being late.

thank -visit them/help the children

blame -drive too fast/cause the damage

charge -park there/use the phone

pay -guard the house/teach them French

4

T: join us -stop him

S1: I don't want him to join us. Can't you stop him?

S2: How can I stop him from joining us?

cause trouble/leave home -prevent her

use guns/start a fire -prohibit them

learn boxing/do his homework -excuse him

smoke in here/walk home -stop them

Tell the story

- 1 experiments have proved -children -in swimming -at an early age
- 2 pool in L. A. -expert at holding -even before -can walk
- 3 not long -weights from -the pool
- 4 popular game -tricycle race
- 5 lined up -floor -7 feet under water
- 6 compete -each other -end of the pool

Topics for discussion

- 1 Describe your own efforts at learning to swim.
- 2 do you like swimming in a pool or in the sea? why?
- 3 do you think the sight of children doing something that an adult can't do really "encourages" the adult? Why/why not?

Key to Summary writing

At a swimming pool in Los Angeles, children are taught to hold their breath under water before they can walk. They begin learning when they are two months old and, in time, they can pick up weights from the bottom of the pool. The game they enjoy most is the tricycle race, which takes place seven feet under water. Some children pedal their tricycles, while others push or pull them, and a few get across without coming up for far.

At a swimming pool in Los Angeles, children who are taught to hold their breath under water before they can walk often begin learning to swim when two months old. Though they can pick up weights from the bottom of the pool, the game they enjoy most is the underwater tricycle race. This takes place seven feet under water and, while some children pedal their tricycles, others push or pull them. A few get across without coming up for air.

Lesson 95 A fantasy

Comprehension questions

- 1 When did the Ambassador return home? (At lunchtime.)
- 2 How did his wife feel? (Shocked.)
- 3 How did the Ambassador look? (Pale.)
- 4 What state were his clothes in? (Frightful.)
- 5 Why were his clothes in a mess? (Because of a fire extinguisher.)
- 6 Who had set the Embassy on fire? (University students had.)
- 7 What did she ask her husband then? ('Where were you at the time?')
- 8 Where had he been? (In his office.)
- 9 Where did the fire break out? (In the basement.)
- 10 When did the Ambassador go down there? (Immediately.)
- 11 Who aimed a fire extinguisher at him? (Horst did.)
- 12 Why did he do this? (Because he thought the Ambassador was on fire.)
- 13 Was the Ambassador pleased? (No, he wasn't.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if the ambassador came home late for lunch.

S: Did the Ambassador come home late for lunch?

T: Why...?

S: Why did the Ambassador come home late for lunch?

- 1 the Ambassador came home for lunch. (Why) (When) (Who)
- 2 his wife got a shock. (Why) (Who)
- 3 he looked pale. (How) (Who)
- 4 his clothes were in a mess. (What) (Why)
- 5 students set the Embassy on fire. (What)
- 6 the Ambassador was in his office. (Where)
- 7 the fire broke out in the basement. (Where) (What) (When)
- 8 the Ambassador went down immediately. (Where) (When) (Who)
- 9 Horst aimed a fire extinguisher at him. (What) (Why) (Who)
- 10 there was a hole in his hat. (Where)

Pattern drill

1

T: you play chess

S1: I've never seen you play chess.

S2: But I often play chess! I was playing it only yesterday!

her wear trousers/wear make-up/smoke cigars

them sail that boat/work that machine

him drive the car/clean the windows

her talk to Mary/look after the baby

2

T: make this film

S1: Have you been making this film for long?

S2: No, we've only just started making it.

use this machine take singing lessons

write poetry make your own wine

3

T: smoke cigars

S1: Does he smoke cigars?

S2: He used to smoke a lot of cigars, but he gave up smoking

them several years ago.

drink whisky eat sweets

write poetry keep chickens

4

T: enter for -the race

S1: I wonder why he entered for the race.

S2: I don't know. If I'd been him, I wouldn't have entered for it!

compete against/argue with -the others

protest against/agree with -the decision

accept/refuse to accept -the offer

feel pleased with/object to -the result

Tell the story

- 1 Ambassador -returned -wife -shock
- 2 looked pale -clothes -frightful state
- 3 wife asked what -how
- 4 told her -students -Embassy on fire
- 5 asked where -in his office -usual
- 6 fire -basement -went down
- 7 Horst aimed -thought -on fire
- 8 wife suddenly -hole -hat
- 9 asked -explain -fired a shot -window
- 10 Fortunately -not wearing -at the time

Topics for discussion

- 1 Have you ever witnessed a fire? How did it start? Tell us about it.
- 2 What would you do if you discovered a fire at your place of work/study?
- 3 Why do people who want to make a protest sometimes attack a foreign embassy? Do you think this form of protest can be justified? Why/Why not?

Key to Summary writing

While the Ambassador of Escalopia was in his office, university students set the basement of the Embassy on fire. When the Ambassador went to investigate, a man called Horst aimed a fire extinguisher at him because he thought that the Ambassador was on fire. Moreover, there was a hole in the Ambassador's hat which had been made when someone fired a shot through his office window. The Ambassador was lucky, for he was not wearing it at the time.

The Ambassador of Escalopia was in his office when university students set the Embassy basement on fire. After the Ambassador had gone to investigate, a man called Horst aimed a fire extinguisher at him under the impression that the Ambassador was on fire. In addition to this, there was a hole in the Ambassador's hat. It had been made when someone fired a shot through his office window. It was lucky for the Ambassador that he was not wearing it.

Lesson 96 The dead return

Comprehension questions

- 1 Where is a Festival for the Dead held? (In Japan.)
- 2 How often is it held there? (Once a year.)
- 3 Is the festival a sad occasion? (No, it isn't.)
- 4 It's a cheerful one, isn't it? (Yes, it is.)
- 5 Where are the dead said to return? (To their homes.)
- 6 Who are they welcomed by? (By the living.)
- 7 Why is food laid out for them? (Because they are expected to be hungry after their journey.)
- 8 What is hung outside each house? (Specially-made lanterns.)
- 9 Why are they hung there? (To help the dead to find their way.)
- 10 What do people do all night long? (Dance and sing.)
- 11 Do they eat the food they've prepared for the dead? (No, they don't.)
- 12 Why don't they? (Because it is considered unlucky for anyone living to eat it.)
- 13 When do they throw it away? (Early the next morning.)
- 14 Where do they throw it? (Into a river or the sea.)

Asking questions: Ask me if...

T: Ask me if a festival for the Dead is held in Japan.

S: Is a festival for the Dead held in Japan?

T: Where ...?

S: Where is a festival for the Dead held?

- 1 a Festival for the Dead is held in Japan. (Where) (What kind)
- 2 it is held once a year. (How often)
- 3 the dead are said to return. (Who)
- 4 they return to their homes. (Where)
- 5 they're welcomed by the living. (Who)
- 6 food is laid out for them. (Who) (What)
- 7 they're expected to be hungry. (Who)
- 8 lanterns are specially made. (What)
- 9 they're hung outside each house. (Where)
- 10 they're put there to help the dead. (Why)
- 11 the living dance all night. (How long)
- 12 the food is thrown away in the morning. (When) (What) (Why)

Pattern drill

1

T: the fire -burn low

S1: What did you say about the fire?

S2: I said it's burning low.

your brother -grow fat/get thin

the supplies -prove adequate/get scarce

the weather -turn cold/get warmer

Mr. Smith -grow old/go blind/get deaf

2

T: wrong -to cheat

S1: Do you consider it wrong to cheat?

S2: Of course I think it's wrong to cheat!

right/necessary -to pay the bill

fun/good -for people to go to parties

sensible/wise -to use safety belts

stupid/bad -for people to work too hard

3

T: old -run a hotel

S1: He isn't old enough to run a hotel.

S2: What! He's old enough to run ten hotels!

clever -pass a test/solve that problem

well -give a party/go for a walk

good -win the match/get a prize

rich -buy a car/pay the bill

4

T: early train -can't catch

S1: That train's too early for me. I can't catch it.

S2: Neither can I.

difficult exam/test -shan't pass

expensive stamp/case -can't afford

long film/play -don't want to see

hard problem/puzzle -haven't solved

Tell the story

- 1 Festival -once a year -in Japan
- 2 cheerful occasion -dead -said to return -welcomed by the living
- 3 hungry -long journey -food laid out
- 4 lanterns -each house -help -to find
- 5 dance and sing -all night
- 6 morning -food -thrown into -unlucky
- 7 near the sea -lanterns -when -is over
- 8 drift out -guiding -return journey
- 9 crowds -watching -until -no more

Topics for discussion

- 1 What other kinds of festivals do you know about? Why and when are they held?
- 2 Which is your favourite festival in your country? Why?
- 3 Give examples to show that, since ancient times, water has played an important part in different ceremonies all over the world.
Why do you think this is so?

Key to Summary writing

The Japanese annual Festival for the Dead is a cheerful occasion. As the dead are said to return home, food is laid out for them and lanterns are lit to guide them on their way. People dance and sing all night and the uneaten food is thrown into the sea or into a river the next morning. In some places, the lanterns are placed on the sea and people watch from the shore until the lanterns drift out of sight.

The Japanese annual Festival for the Dead is a cheerful occasion, for the dead are said to return home. Not only is food laid out for them, but lanterns are lit to guide them as well while people dance and sing all night. The uneaten food is thrown into the sea or a river the next morning. In some places, the lanterns are placed on the sea. People watch from the shore as the lanterns drift out of sight.